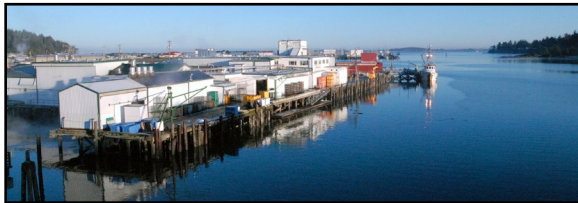


2017-2022

South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve Management Plan

Coos County Oregon



Authors:

Hannah Schrager, South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve (NERR)
John Bragg, South Slough NERR
Adam DeMarzo, South Slough NERR
Bree Yednock, South Slough NERR
Jenni Schmitt, South Slough NERR
Ali Helms, South Slough NERR
Joy Tally, South Slough NERR
Deborah Rudd, South Slough NERR
Eric Dean, South Slough NERR
Rebecca Muse, South Slough NERR
Gary Cooper, formerly South Slough NERR
Craig Cornu, formerly South Slough NERR
Tom Gaskill, formerly South Slough NERR
Pam Wilson, formerly South Slough NERR

This plan is dedicated to Joy Elizabeth Tally; our Joy.

Acknowledgements:

The 2017-2022 Management Plane represents the culmination of the collaborative efforts of the South Slough National Estuarine Reserach Reserve, whose state partner is the Oregon Department of State Lands, and the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.



South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve

Management Plan

2017-2022

Table of Contents

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS.....	i
TABLE OF CONTENTS.....	ii
LIST OF FIGURES.....	iii
LIST OF TABLES.....	vi
LIST OF APPENDICES.....	vi
CHAPTER 1: Executive Summary.....	1-1
CHAPTER 2: Introduction	2-1
CHAPTER 3: Reserve Strategic Plan	3-1
CHAPTER 4: Program Foundations	4-1
Science Program Foundations	4-2
Education Program Foundations	4-16
CHAPTER 5: Administration Plan	5-1
CHAPTER 6: Facilities Development and Improvement Plan	6-1
CHAPTER 7: Resource Protection Plan.....	7-1
CHAPTER 8: Public Uses.....	8-1
CHAPTER 9: Land Acquisition Plan.....	9-1



List of Figures

Chapter 1: Executive Summary

- Figure 1.1: Aerial view of the South Slough estuary, primarily showing Winchester arm.
- Figure 1.2: Science Program summer internship.
- Figure 1.3: The working port of Charleston, Oregon at the mouth of the South Slough estuary.
- Figure 1.4: Summer campers with seasonal education staff on a trail hike.

Chapter 2: Introduction

- Figure 2.1: Map of the 28 NERRs representing most coastal regions.
- Figure 2.2: An aerial view of the South Slough estuary, looking south from the Charleston bridge.
- Figure 2.3: The South Slough watershed in the context of the Coos watershed and the state of Oregon.
- Figure 2.4: The South Slough Reserve in the context of the South Slough watershed.
- Figure 2.5: Rivers and streams contributing fresh water to the South Slough estuary,
- Figure 2.6: Faults and folds occurring in the vicinity of the South Slough watershed.
- Figure 2.7: Distribution of soil types in the South Slough watershed, grouped by series.
- Figure 2.8: Conifer and hardwood tree species richness in the South Slough watershed.
- Figure 2.9: Land cover patterns in the South Slough watershed.
- Figure 2.10: Distribution of eelgrass beds in the South Slough estuary.
- Figure 2.11: Neighborhoods in the Coos Bay/ North Bend area.
- Figure 2.12: Euro-American settlers on a horse-drawn railcar.
- Figure 2.13: Field of invasive reed canary grass in the palustrine wetlands of Wasson Creek
- Figure 2.14: A yarder, which uses a system of cables to pull logs up so they can be processed.
- Figure 2.15: A Climate Reference Network (CRN) station located in the Reserve's Fredrickson Marsh.
- Figure 2.16: Lands within Reserve boundaries categorized as core or buffer habitats.
- Figure 2.17: Ownership and uses of land within the South Slough watershed.

Chapter 3: Reserve Strategic Plan

- Figure 3.1: Canoe paddle trip with South Slough partners and stakeholders.
- Figure 3.2: Staffer Talo Silver assisting with Real-time Kinematic Surveys at Hidden Creek Marsh.
- Figure 3.3: Prototype hydrodynamic model for the Coos estuary from University of Oregon.
- Figure 3.4: School group learning about salt marsh habitats.
- Figure 3.5: Teachers On the Estuary participants learning about wetland plant communities.
- Figure 3.6: Invasive European green crabs (*Carcinus maenas*) in the Coos estuary.
- Figure 3.7: Bree Yednock and Eric Dean (background) during a staff-wide effort to pull invasive purple loosestrife (*Lythrum salicaria*) from Barview Marsh, near the mouth of South Slough.

List of Figures continued

Chapter 4: Program Foundations

- Figure 4.1: Science staff collecting elevation data at a Reserve Sentinel Site.
- Figure 4.2: Science program participants learning about field survey methods.
- Figure 4.3: Reserve Science Center laboratory located at the Oregon Institute of Marine Biology.
- Figure 4.4: Science staffers downloading abiotic data from a sonde at one of the Reserve SWMP stations.
- Figure 4.5: The extent of South Slough Reserve's SWMP program.
- Figure 4.6: Locations of South Slough Reserve's Sentinel Site stations and vertical control marks.
- Figure 4.7: Volunteers and staff pulling in a beach seine at Barview.
- Figure 4.8: Survey map from 2016 green crab trapping effort.
- Figure 4.9: Mushroom workshop.
- Figure 4.10: Summer campers proudly displaying their work.
- Figure 4.11: Education program about to head out on the water in the Reserve canoe, "Chmoosh".
- Figure 4.12: Class discovering coastal forest habitats on one of the Reserve trails.
- Figure 4.13: Students monitoring a salt marsh plot for vegetation.
- Figure 4.14: Visitors exploring the displays at the Reserve Interpretive Center.
- Figure 4.15: Education Coordinator, Joy Tally, demonstrating to teachers how to pull in a beach seine.
- Figure 4.16: Wetland scientists, educators and stakeholders tour the Ni-les'tun Marsh.
- Figure 4.17: John Bragg and Sue Bickford display aerial drones used for monitoring.
- Figure 4.18: Audience at the Reserve's 'Introducing Green Infrastructure for Coastal Resilience' workshop.
- Figure 4.19: At a 'Climate Adaptation for Coastal Communities' workshop in Newport.
- Figure 4.20: Octoberfish festival in Charleston, Oregon.
- Figure 4.21: Participants at the Reserve's 40th anniversary event helping load canoes after paddle trip.
- Figure 4.22: Friends of South Slough intern Zoe Shapira collecting surface elevation data.
- Figure 4.23: Attendees of the Stand Up for the Bay event learning about slough creatures.

Chapter 5: Administration Plan

- Figure 5.1: Organizational chart for the Department of State Lands
- Figure 5.2: Organizational chart for the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve.
- Figure 5.3: Locations of Reserve staff. OIMB = Oregon Institute of Marine Biology

Chapter 6: Facilities Development and Improvement Plan

- Figure 6.1: Aerial image of the Reserve's Interpretive Center.
- Figure 6.2: Solar panels that are mounted to the roof of the Interpretive Center auditorium.
- Figure 6.3: Reserve staffers, Hannah Schragger and Joy Tally, pointing out an exhibit for an education program.
- Figure 6.4: The Reserve Science Center building located at the Oregon Institute of Marine Biology.
- Figure 6.5: Map of Reserve facilities and locations.
- Figure 6.6: The Katana boat, which Reserve staff use in deeper waters and out in the greater Coos estuary.

List of Figures continued

Chapter 7: Resource Protection Plan

Figure 7.1: Hunting map, showing locations where hunting is allowed, prohibited, or restricted.

Figure 7.2 Commercial oysters inside the Reserve, adjacent to Long Island Point.

Figure 7.3: Hinch Bridge, located in the remote southern end of the Reserve, is a hot-spot for vandalism.

Figure 7.4: Example of sign used to communicate uses that are allowed or prohibited within the Reserve.

Figure 7.5: Picture of a yarder harvesting timber.

Table 7.1: A breakdown of activities that are permissible and prohibited at the Reserve.

Chapter 8: Public Uses

Figure 8.1: Locations of paddle launch points, parking areas, trails, and the Interpretive Center.

Figure 8.2: Trail maps for the South Slough Reserve.

Figure 8.3: Boardwalk crossing over a large bed of skunk cabbage.

Figure 8.4: South Slough paddle map, including recommended route.

Figure 8.5: A Port Orford cedar tree that died from root rot infection.

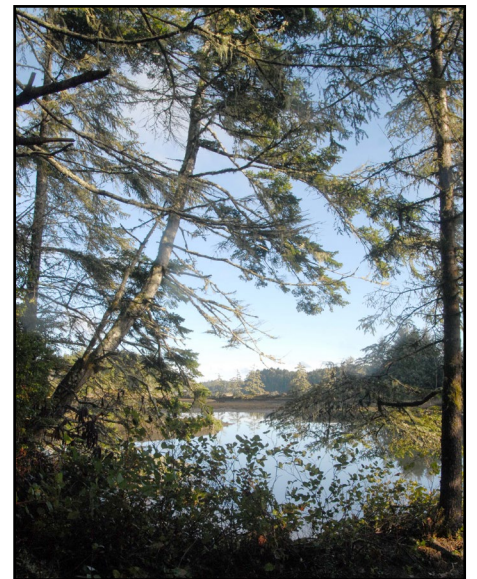
Figure 8.6: Blooming Western bog lily (*Lilium occidentale*) on Reserve lands.

Chapter 9: Land Acquisition Plan

Figure 9.1: Priority areas for acquisition.

Figure 9.2: Map showing Reserve boundaries along with lands acquired since the last management plan.

Figure 9.3: View of Indian Point.



List of Tables

Chapter 2: Introduction

Table 2.1: Common species found in the Reserve, both plant and animal, for each main habitat type.

Chapter 6: Facilities Development and Improvement Plan

Table 6.1: Detailed list of Reserve facilities.

Table 6.2: Age of major Reserve facilities, including remodel information.

Chapter 7: Resource Protection Plan

Table 7.1: A breakdown of activities that are permissible and prohibited at the Reserve.

Chapter 8: Public Uses

Table 8.1: Visitor types and numbers that use the Reserve each year.

Chapter 9: Land Acquisition Plan

Table 9.1: Funding sources that the Reserve uses to acquire lands.

Table 9.2: Lands acquired by South Slough Reserve since 2006.

List of Appendices

Appendix A: Code of Federal Regulations

Appendix B: Oregon Revised Statutes

Appendix C: Oregon Administrative Rules

Appendix D: Memorandum of Agreement between the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, the Oregon Department of State Lands, and the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve Management Commission

Appendix E: Interagency Master Agreement between the Oregon State Board of Higher Education on behalf of University of Oregon and Oregon Institute of Marine Biology and Oregon Department of State lands on behalf of South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve.

Appendix F: List of Formal Agreements between the Reserve & Partner Organizations

Appendix G: Federal Consistency Determination

Appendix H: Public Comment

Chapter 1: Executive Summary

Plan Purpose and Scope

Since its founding as the nation's first National Estuarine Research Reserve, the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve (Reserve) has been a leader in improving the stewardship and understanding of Pacific Northwest estuaries and coastal watersheds. The Reserve is managed through a partnership between the National Oceanic and Atmosphere Administration (NOAA) and the Oregon Department of State Lands (DSL).

Federal regulations require that the Reserve prepares a five-year management plan to provide direction for Reserve programs. This plan, for 2017-2022, is the fourth edition of a Reserve management plan and supports the strategic goals of NOAA and DSL. Its geographic scope includes all lands within the formal boundaries of the Reserve.

Reserve management priorities for 2017-2022 include climate change, habitat protection, and invasive species. The strategic plan included in this document, which addresses these priorities, was developed through collaborative engagement with partners, including professional colleagues and public and private stakeholders. The strategic plan responds to needs through the integrated activities of the Research, Stewardship, Education, Public Involvement, and Coastal Training programs. The purpose of this plan is to provide a framework for program undertakings over the next five years, and to guide Reserve staff and stakeholders in management decisions.

In order to track and measure progress, the Reserve periodically submits reports to the National Estuarine Research Reserve System (Reserve System) and to DSL. As directed by Section 312 of the Coastal Zone Management Act, NOAA conducts periodic program reviews to ensure Reserve consistency with federal laws and NOAA policies. DSL regularly evaluates agency key performance measures related to Reserve undertakings and the objectives outlined in the 2017-2022 strategic plan provide measurable metrics.

Reserve Context

Designated on June 27, 1974, the 4,771-acre (1930.76-hectare) Reserve is located on the South Slough of the Coos estuary in Coos County, Oregon, about 220 miles southwest of Portland. The Coos Bay estuary comprises the largest and deepest port between San Francisco and the Columbia River. Coos County is home to about one third of Oregon's coastal population and the Reserve itself neighbors the two largest cities in the area, North Bend and Coos Bay. The Reserve encompasses a mixture of open water channels, tidal and freshwater wetlands, riparian areas, and forested uplands (Figure 1.1).

The South Slough has a long cultural history, having been inhabited for millennia by the Coos and Coquille Indians, and more recently by European descendants. The Tribal and European legacies within the Reserve still influence working partnerships and program activities.



Figure 1.1: Aerial view of the South Slough estuary, primarily showing Winchester arm. View is looking north.

Environmental influences and stressors to the Reserve and surrounding areas include proximity to the Cascadia subduction zone, sea level rise, ocean acidification, invasive species, fragmented habitat connectivity, and anthropogenic inputs, such as non-point source pollution.

Political, social, and economic influences on the Reserve include its proximity to one of Oregon’s main fishing ports (Charleston) (Figure 1.3); its location as a site for local oyster cultivators; its existence as a public asset for residents and visitors of Coos County; and its role as a provider of educational services in the state and region.

The Reserve is composed of the Education Program, the Science Program, and Administration. The Education Program houses the education staff, the Coastal Training Program, and the Public Involvement Program, while the Science

Program houses research staff, the Monitoring Programs, and the Stewardship Program. All programs integrate to support the Reserve’s mission and establish its niche.

Reserve Niche & Role in Addressing Coastal Management Issues

The Reserve’s niche is to serve as a living laboratory and classroom, as well as a monitoring and reference site for coastal research and education. The Reserve also contributes to improving habitat connectivity and resiliency in its region. The niche is defined by Oregon’s statutory management policy, which directs the Reserve to maintain the integrity of the estuary; protect the estuary from uses and activities that alter or affect its natural dynamics processes; and preserve the area for long-term research and education.

The Reserve’s niche is also defined by its contributions to the Reserve System and to coastal management. The Reserve is a SWMP site, including acting as a Sentinel Site in the Reserve System. Reserve programs monitor ecological change over time and provide scientific information to coastal managers and residents for informing planning, resource management, and decision-making.



Figure 1.2: Science Program summer internship.

Priority Coastal Management Issues and Reserve Goals

The following priorities and goals compose the 2017-2022 strategic plan. Reserve programs will work together to address the following:

Priority 1: Climate Change

Goal 1: Increase Reserve understanding of the local effects of sea level rise.

Goal 2: Increase Reserve understanding of ocean acidification in the Pacific Northwest.

Goal 3: Increase Reserve understanding of the relationships between climate change and ecosystem functions in Pacific Northwest marine and estuarine environments.

Goal 4: Increase communications about actual and potential climate change impacts to diverse audiences.

Priority 2: Habitat Protection

Goal 1: Assess and monitor habitats in the Coos estuary in order to characterize conditions and changes in habitat use and availability.

Goal 2: Continue to build the ridgetop-to-estuary habitat restoration program.

Goal 3: Increase public awareness of Reserve stewardship practices, habitat-related research, and habitat protection.

Priority 3: Invasive Species

Goal 1: Characterize and monitor the extent of invasive species affecting the Reserve.



Figure 1.3: The fishing port of Charleston, Oregon, at the mouth of the South Slough estuary.

Goal 2: Measure and track the impacts of invasive species in coastal habitats.

Goal 3: Reduce the impact of invasive species negatively affecting or threatening the Reserve.

Goal 4: Increase distribution of information about the status and impacts of invasive species to diverse audiences.

Reserve Programs Overview

Research, Monitoring, and Stewardship

The Reserve Science Program conducts and coordinates all estuarine research, monitoring and stewardship activities within the Reserve. The Science Program also often extends research and monitoring efforts into the Coos estuary, gathering and making available information necessary for improved understanding and management of estuarine systems.

The science team is overseen by a research coordinator and includes the watershed monitoring coordinator, the estuarine monitoring coordinator, a monitoring technician, and the stewardship coordinator. Additionally, research assistants, part-time or

temporary employees, specialists, interns, and volunteers aid in carrying out work related to specific, usually grant-funded, projects and tasks. The program is in charge of implementing national programs including SWMP), the Sentinel Site program, and a Habitat Mapping & Change program, which is part of SWMP.

The geographic scope of the Science Program extends from the Reserve, the South Slough, and the Coos estuary, throughout the Pacific Northwest and across the Reserve System.

Education, Coastal Training, and Public Involvement

The Reserve Education Program coordinates all public outreach, education, interpretation, and coastal training activities at the Reserve. The program is designed to enhance public awareness and understanding of estuarine ecosystems and provide appropriate opportunities for public education and interpretation.

The education team is overseen by the education program coordinator and includes an education program specialist, the coastal training program coordinator, a public involvement coordinator, and various temporary workers, interns, and volunteers. Education activities



Figure 1.4: Summer campers with seasonal education staff on a trail hike.

include formal and informal education, public involvement and volunteer coordination, public programs and events, and training and technical assistance for coastal managers and residents. The Education Program is also in charge of implementing the national Teachers on the Estuary (TOTE) program at the Reserve.

The Education Program primarily draws participation from schools across Oregon and visitors from the West Coast, although tourists from throughout the United States and world visit the Reserve as well. The primary audience for the Reserve's educational efforts is within a six county area of southwestern Oregon; Coos, Curry, Douglas, Lane, Jackson, and Josephine. The geographic scope of the Public Involvement Program primarily includes, but is not limited to, the Southern Oregon coastal region. The Coastal Training Program focuses on coastal managers and decision makers in the lower Columbia biogeographic region.

Program integration for achieving goals

A highly communicative and inclusive working culture at the Reserve supports cross-program integration, which in turn facilitates success. For example, the staff at the Reserve collectively developed the 2017-2022 strategic plan so that strategic actions were priority based, instead of program based. Although each action has a programmatic lead, multiple sectors of the Reserve are tasked with coordinating actions to accomplish objectives and goals. Regular all staff updates, cross-program support and involvement, and a culture of respect at the Reserve, allow for collaboration and deeper community involvement.

Major Changes Since the 2006-2011 Management Plan

- The 2017-2022 strategic plan is priority based, with cross-sector goals that focus on climate change, habitat protection, and invasive species. Reserve programs are assigned as leads to objectives and actions.
- This plan includes an explicit Facilities Plan, a Public Use Plan, and a Land Acquisition Plan.
- A Public Involvement Program section has been added to the Program Foundations chapter.
- The Stewardship Program section has been folded into the Science Program section of the Program Foundations chapter. Stewardship Program activities are also highlighted in the Land Acquisition Plan, Resource Protection Plan, and Public Use Plan.
- Similarly, the Estuarine Monitoring Program and Watershed Monitoring Program are also captured in the Science Program section of the Program Foundations chapter.
- The description of the Reserve setting is now folded into the Introduction, whereas in the last plan it was separate.

Chapter 2: Introduction

The South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve (Reserve) is a 4,771 acre natural area located in the Coos estuary on the southern Oregon coast. The Reserve was designated in 1974 as the first unit of the National Estuarine Research Reserve System. The Reserve System was established by Congress as part of the 1972 Coastal Zone Management Act (CZMA) and is a network of estuarine habitats protected and managed for the purposes of long-term research, education, and coastal stewardship.

The Reserve is administered as a partnership between the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) and the State of Oregon (see Appendix A for 15 C.F.R. Part 921). The Reserve encompasses a mixture of open water channels, tidal and freshwater wetlands, riparian areas, and forested uplands.

The Reserve supports and coordinates research, education, and stewardship programs which serve to enhance a scientific and public understanding of estuaries and contribute to improved coastal watershed management. Over the past 40+ years, the Reserve has grown in the depth and scope of its programs and developed facilities to meet the needs of visitors and staff.

This document is the fourth revision of the Reserve Management Plan and sets a course for the Reserve to promote awareness about estuaries and provide information necessary for effective coastal watershed management. During the 2017-2022 planning period, the Reserve will focus efforts on applying

its resources to issues relevant to the Coos watershed and to activities that will benefit local communities.

Management Planning at the Reserve

Federal regulations require each National Estuarine Research Reserve to have a federally-approved management plan that provides direction for Reserve programs by identifying management priorities and actions. The management plan provides the basis for evaluation of the Reserve pursuant to Section 312 of the CZMA. Federal regulations also require that the Reserve management plan be updated every five years. The 2017-2022 Reserve Management Plan builds on the capacity that was developed during the last planning period by addressing issues and needs significant to the local community through guidance for the Reserve's programs and operations.

The 2017-2022 Reserve Management Plan provides an overview of the programs and operations of the Reserve, a description of the natural, physical, and sociocultural setting, and outlines the mission, vision, and guiding principles by which the Reserve operates. The plan also identifies strategic priorities, goals, objectives, and actions that the Reserve will focus on for the planning period.

This management plan has been developed in accordance with the regulations of NOAA. It is consistent with the congressional intent of Section 315 of the Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972, as amended, and with the provisions of the State of Oregon (Appendix G).

Introduction to the National Estuarine Research Reserve System

The National Estuarine Reserve System was created by the Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972 (16 U.S.C. §§ 1451 et seq.), as amended, to augment the National Coastal Zone Management Program which is dedicated to comprehensive, sustainable management of the nation's coasts.

The Reserve System is a network of protected areas representative of the various biogeographic regions and estuarine types in the United States. Reserves are established for long-term research, education and interpretation to promote informed management of the Nation's estuaries and coastal habitats (5 C.R.F. § 921.1(a)). The Reserve System currently consists of 29 reserves in 24 states and territories, protecting over one million acres of estuarine lands and waters (Figure 2.1).

The Reserve System is a partnership program between the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) and the coastal states. NOAA provides funding, national guidance and technical assistance. The state partner manages reserve resources on a daily basis working collaboratively with local and regional partners. For the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve, that state partner and administrative agency is the Oregon Department of State Lands.

National Estuarine Research Reserve System Goals

Estuaries are biologically rich, economically valuable, and highly vulnerable ecosystems. The vision and mission of the Reserve System reflect

the importance of these systems within our communities (see sidebar below).

The program goals, per Federal regulations 15 C.F.R. § 921.1(b), outline five specific goals for the Reserve System:

1. Ensure a stable environment for research through long-term protection of National Estuarine Research Reserve resources;
2. Address coastal management issues identified as significant through coordinated estuarine research within the system;
3. Enhance public awareness and understanding of estuarine areas and provide suitable opportunities for public education and interpretation;
4. Promote Federal, state, public and private use of one or more Reserves within the System when such entities conduct estuarine research; and
5. Conduct and coordinate estuarine research within the system, gathering and making available information necessary for improved understanding and management of estuarine areas.

National Estuarine Research Reserve System Vision and Mission

Vision: Resilient estuaries and coastal watersheds where human and natural communities thrive.

Mission: To practice and promote stewardship of coasts and estuaries through innovative research, education, and training using a place-based system of protected areas.

These foundational goals are complemented by those that are systematically set by the program every five years. Strategic planning has been an integral part of the National Estuarine Research Reserve System for nearly twenty years. The planning process is designed to bridge national program direction with local coastal management needs through a representative and participatory process that supports NOAA's mission of science, service, and stewardship. The 2017-2022 Reserve System Strategic Plan focuses on three core issues: environmental change, habitat protection, and water quality. The Reserve System Strategic Plan Goals are:

1. **Protected Places:** Enhance and inspire stewardship, protection, and management of estuaries and their watersheds in coastal communities through place-based approaches.

2. **Applying Science:** Improve the scientific understanding of estuaries and their watersheds through the development and application of reserve research, data, and tools.

3. **Educating Communities:** Advance environmental appreciation and scientific literacy, allowing for sciencebased decisions that positively affect estuaries, watersheds, and coastal communities.

Biogeographic Regions and Boundaries of the National Estuarine Research Reserve System

NOAA has identified eleven distinct biogeographic regions and 29 sub-regions in the United States, each of which contains several types of estuarine ecosystems (15 C.F.R. § 921, Appendix A). When complete, the Reserve System will contain examples of estuarine hydrologic and biological types characteristic of each biogeographic region. As of 2017, the Reserve System includes 29 reserves.

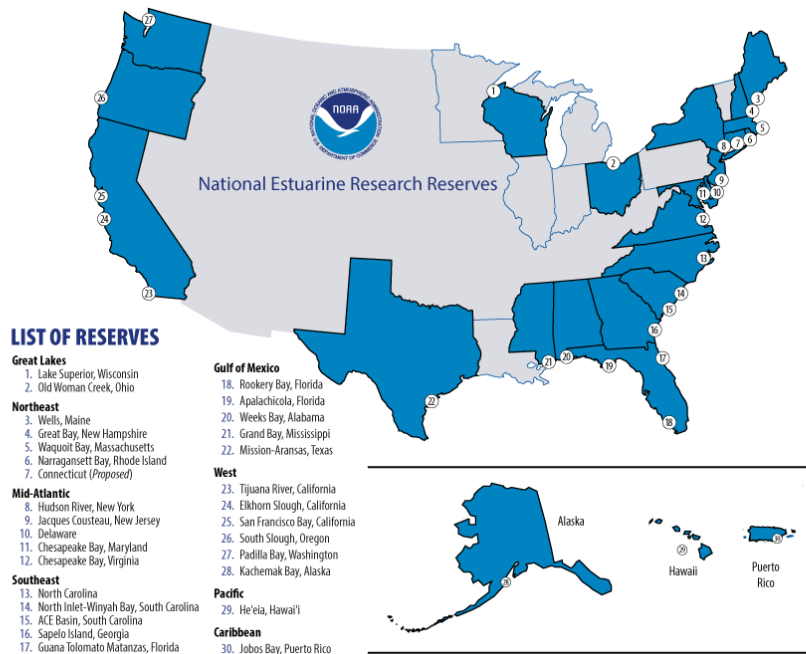


Figure 2.1: Map of the 29 National Estuarine Research Reserves representing most coastal regions.

Reserve boundary size will vary greatly depending on the nature of the ecosystem. Boundaries must include an adequate portion of the key land and water areas of the natural system to approximate an ecological unit and to ensure effective conservation. Reserve boundaries encompass areas for which adequate state control has or will be established by the managing entity over human activities occurring within the reserve. Reserve boundaries include a “core” area which is comprised of key land and water encompassing resources representative of the total ecosystem, which if compromised could endanger the research objectives of the reserve, as well as a “buffer” area designed to protect the core area and provide additional protection for estuarine-dependent species, including those that are rare or endangered. Buffer areas may also include areas necessary for facilities required for research and interpretation. Additionally, buffer areas are identified to accommodate a shift of the core area as a result of biological, ecological or geo-morphological change which reasonably could be expected to occur (15 C.F.R. § 921.11 (c)(3)).

National Estuarine Research Reserve Administrative Framework

The process for federal designation of a National Estuarine Research Reserve has many steps and involves many individuals and organizations. While each reserve is a partnership program between NOAA and a coastal state, there are many entities that collaborate to support designation of a reserve. Other partners include federal and state agencies, non-profit groups, universities and members of the local community. For more information on the designation process see <http://nerrs.noaa.gov/about/designation-process.html>.

Upon designation, the reserve implements the approved management plan and is eligible for NOAA financial assistance on a cost-share basis with the state. A reserve may apply to NOAA for funds to help support implementation of the management plan largely funding operations, research, monitoring, education/interpretation, training, stewardship, development projects, facility construction, and land acquisition. Management plans provide a vision and framework to guide reserve activities during a five year period and enable the reserves and NOAA to track progress and realize opportunities for growth. Each management plan contains the reserve goals, objectives, and strategies supported by programs focused on research and monitoring, education and outreach, training, and stewardship. They also outline administration, public access, land acquisition and facility plans and needs, as well as restoration and resource manipulation plans, if applicable. Reserves are increasingly confronted with complex questions regarding new uses in or near reserves that may or may not be compatible with the Reserve System’s mission. A thoughtful and comprehensive management plan provides a foundation for addressing these challenges to protect and manage reserve resources wisely and ensure the public and coastal decision makers value and protect coastal resources.

NOAA administers the Reserve System and establishes standards for designating and operating reserves, provides support for reserve operations and system-wide programming, undertakes projects that benefit the Reserve System, and integrates information from individual reserves and programs to support decision-making at the national level. Additionally, NOAA periodically evaluates reserves for

compliance with federal requirements and with the individual reserve's federally approved management plan, as mandated under Section 312 of the Coastal Zone Management Act (16 U.S.C. § 1458; see also 15 C.F.R. § 921.40).

NOAA currently provides leadership and support for three system-wide programs including the System-Wide Monitoring Program, the K-12 Estuarine Education Program, and the Coastal Training Program, as well as the NERRS Science Collaborative. NOAA also provides support for initiatives focused on the Reserve System's priorities: climate change, water quality and habitat protection.

The South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve

The South Slough Sanctuary was established on June 27, 1974 under Section 315 of the Coastal Zone Management Act (CZMA). The South Slough Sanctuary, as it was originally known, was the first National Estuarine Sanctuary in the United States. The designation resulted from the concerted efforts of many citizens and elected officials who recognized the abundant resources and values provided by the South Slough.

The history of the Reserve began in 1971 when the Coos County Planning Department formed a committee to assist with the development of a county land use plan. The committee proposed a quarter-mile protection zone around South Slough which was approved by the public and the Planning Department.

In 1972, Congress passed the Coastal Zone Management Act which, with subsequent reauthorizations, recognizes that resources of

the coastal zone are of national significance and are rapidly disappearing. Section 315 of the 1972 CZMA established the National Estuarine Sanctuary Program.



Figure 2.2: An aerial view of the South Slough estuary, looking south from the Charleston bridge.

In 1973, of the twelve sites under consideration by NOAA, South Slough was chosen as the initial site for what is now known as the National Estuarine Research Reserve System. The State of Oregon was awarded \$400,000 in federal funds for initial land acquisition and management of the newly created Sanctuary, which was matched 50-50 with state funds, private contributions, and discounted land sales. The Nature Conservancy coordinated and negotiated the purchase of the original properties on behalf of the State of Oregon. The federal guidelines for the program required that the area chosen to be part of the Sanctuary include "water and land units constituting a natural ecological unit" along with the ability to remain a healthy and viable system.

By 1978, the Division of State Lands (now the Department of State Lands) had purchased 72.6% of the area originally proposed for the Sanctuary. In 1986, Congress reauthorized the Coastal Zone Management Act and changed the name of the program designated under Section 315. Consequently, the South Slough Sanctuary

was renamed the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve.

Local Management of South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve

The Reserve is managed under a partnership between NOAA and the State of Oregon. Oregon state law (O.R.S. 273.553 et seq., Appendix B) complements and reinforces federal regulations by providing for the protection and maintenance of Reserve resources through state policy. This set of state statutes established management policy for the Reserve and designates the Reserve Management Commission as the Reserve's immediate governing body (see Administration Plan, Chapter 5). The statutes also provide that management of the Reserve is subject to any agreements between the State of Oregon and NOAA (Appendix D).

Oregon statute also designates the Oregon Department of State Lands (DSL) as the Reserve's state partner agency. DSL manages Reserve resources on a daily basis, working collaboratively with local and regional partners, and is under

jurisdiction of the State Land Board. The State Land Board consists of the Governor, Secretary of State, and State Treasurer. All administrative decisions at the Reserve must comply with the policies of the State Land Board.

The DSL holds title to the lands within the Reserve and manages them as assets of the Common School Fund for the State of Oregon. The DSL provides oversight of the day to day management of the Reserve's resources, programs, and operations. The director of the DSL (or a designee) serves as permanent chair of the Reserve Management Commission.

Ecological Attributes

The 4,771-acre (1930.76-hectare) Reserve is located in the South Slough watershed, a part of the Coos estuary on the southern Oregon coast. Covering an area of approximately 600 square miles, the Coos estuary is the sixth largest estuary on the Pacific coast of the contiguous United States and the largest estuary completely within Oregon state lines (Figure 2.3). Coos Bay is about 220 miles southwest of Portland, Oregon. Like most estuaries found in Oregon, the Coos estuary is a river mouth that drowned as sea level began to rise 20,000 years ago. The South Slough watershed is a 19,295 acre sub-basin of the Coos watershed drainage. See Figure 2.4 for a map of the South Slough watershed and Reserve.

Regional weather consists of cool, moist winters and mild summers. Weather is generally warm and dry from May through September with an average rainfall of less than four inches (10 cm). Cooler, wetter weather occurs from October through April, when average annual rainfall is about 56 inches (142.24 cm).

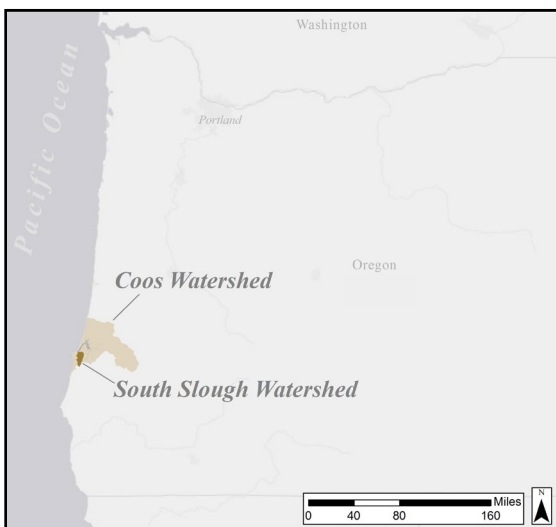
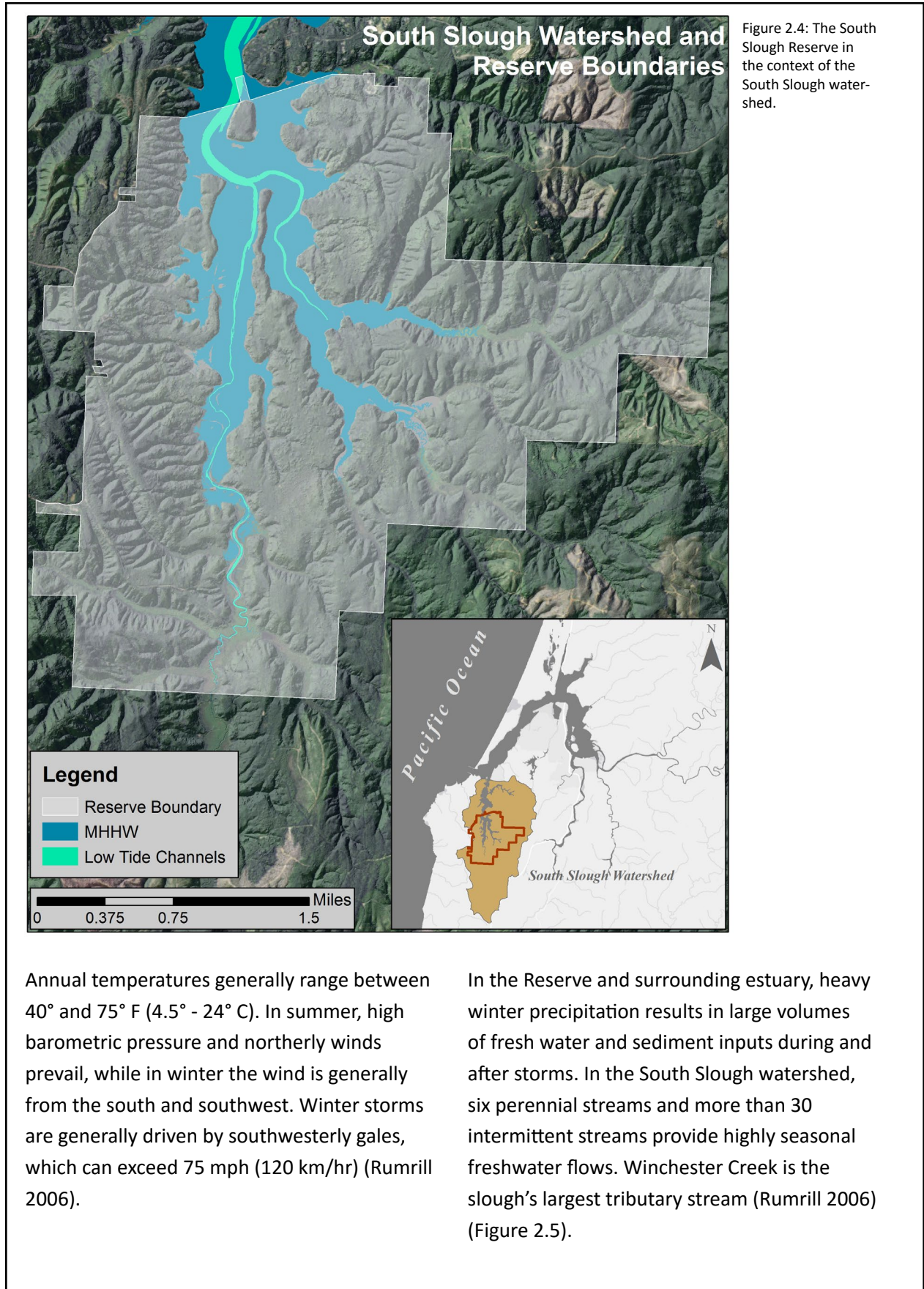


Figure 2.3: The South Slough watershed in the context of the Coos watershed and the state of Oregon.



The influence of salt water in the slough is more pronounced during summers when freshwater input is low. Tides are mixed and follow a semi-diurnal pattern with two high tides and two low tides per day. Circulation patterns are strongly influenced by the tides and although they are complex and poorly understood (Juza 1995; Roegner and Shanks 2001), new progressions in three dimensional modeling may allow better understanding in the near future (Cooper 2012; Cornu and Souder 2015).

The South Slough watershed lies along a geologic syncline, or fold, which bears its name (Figure 2.6). Due to this formation, the slough's eastern and western slopes are of distinct geologic types. The eastern shore formation is typical of the Coos watershed, and is composed of highly-erodible Quaternary marine terraces of unconsolidated to semi-consolidated sand, silt, and clay (Figure 2.7). The terraces slope gently and are worn down along creek beds to sandstone and siltstone. The western side's Empire Formation, with scattered Quaternary marine terraces, is composed of hard impermeable sandstone (Rumrill 2006). The slopes are mantled with sand, silty loam, and loamy sand (Robinson 2009).

In Reserve waters, salinity, specific conductivity, nutrients, and chlorophyll concentrations vary greatly along the salinity gradient; nutrients and chlorophyll concentrations are at generally healthy levels (Cornu and Souder 2015). Water temperature, oxygen, and acidity (pH) are less responsive to changes in salinity, and are also at healthy levels in the Reserve (Cornu and Souder 2015).

A majority of the Reserve is composed of forested uplands that are typical of the Coos

watershed and the Coast Range (Figure 2.8). Virtually all of the forested portions of the Coos watershed have been logged at least one time in the past hundred years. Some areas have been logged two or three times. Surrounding the Reserve there is widespread evidence of ongoing clearcuts, and until recent years, most harvested areas were replanted exclusively with Douglas fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii*) resulting in homogeneous regeneration stands. Within the Reserve, uplands are typically dense 15- to 75-year-old mixed conifer forests of Sitka spruce (*Picea sitchensis*), western hemlock (*Tsuga heterophylla*), Douglas fir, and cedars (*Chamaecyparis lawsoniana* and *Thuja plicata*). Other upland habitats include pockets of mixed hardwoods and brushy slopes (Figure 2.9).

Additional habitats in the Reserve include:

- Freshwater ponds and marshes frequently form in the sediment which has accumulated immediately above the high tide line and just up- and downstream of beaver dams. Most freshwater wetlands occur in the extensive stream systems of the southern and eastern portions of the watershed. A few isolated wetlands exist in the uplands.
- Salt marshes line the estuary itself. Reserve investment in wetland restoration over the years has increased salt marsh coverage in the Reserve.
- Extensive tide flats created by the abundant sediments carried into the Coos estuary cover areas just above the low-tide channel. They are usually composed of soft, unconsolidated mud or muddy sand and are often partially covered by mats of green algae.
- Open channels with muddy bottoms provide benthic habitat even at the lowest tides.

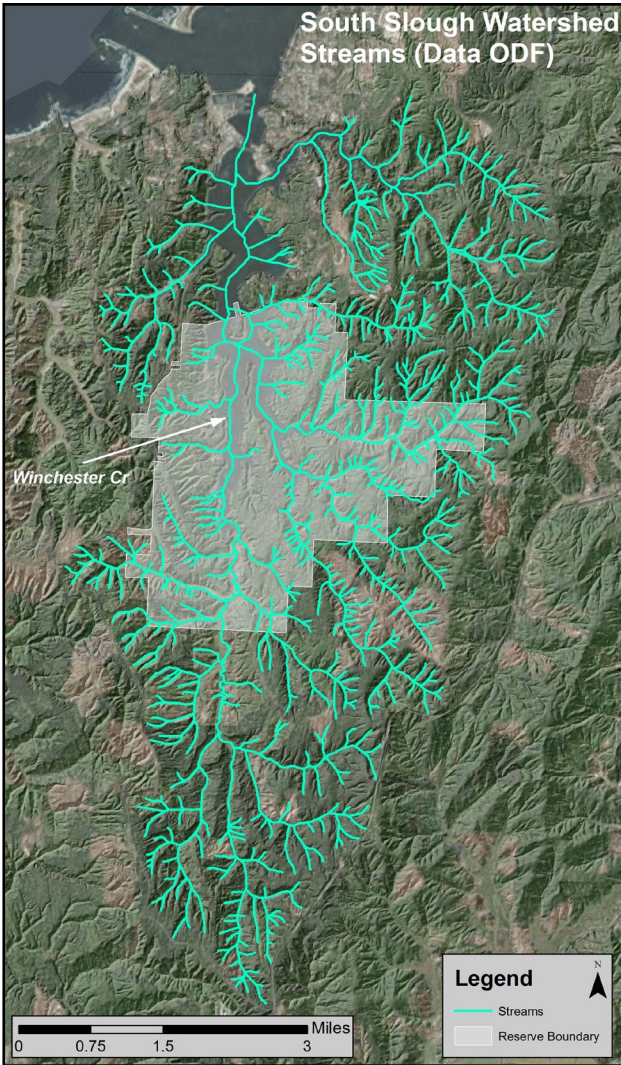


Figure 2.5: Rivers and streams contributing fresh water to the South Slough estuary, With a few exceptions, most streams other than Winchester Creek are designated as small. Small stream flows average 2 cfs or less throughout the year. Winchester Creek is considered a large stream and averages 10 cfs or more throughout the year. However, streams are very seasonal. For example, Winchester Creek winter discharge peaks from 2011-2013 were ~120 cfs while summer base flows were closer to 2.6 cfs (Cornu et al. 2012; Cornu and Souder 2015).

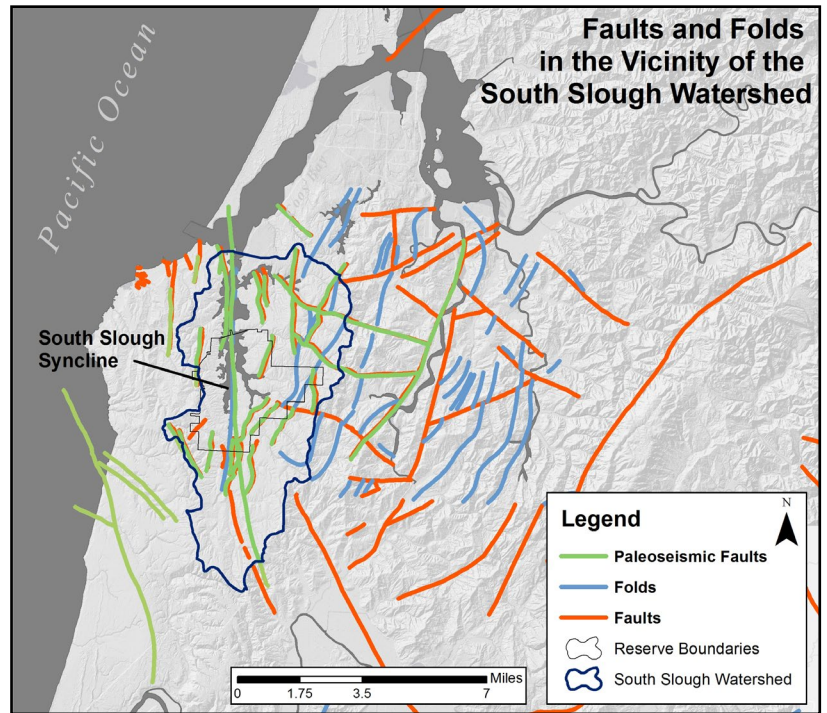


Figure 2.6: Faults and folds occurring in the vicinity of the South Slough watershed. Paleoseismic faults are highlighted, designating faults that were the source of significant earthquakes (6.0 or greater) in the past 1.6 million years. Data USGS 2005; DOGAMI 2009

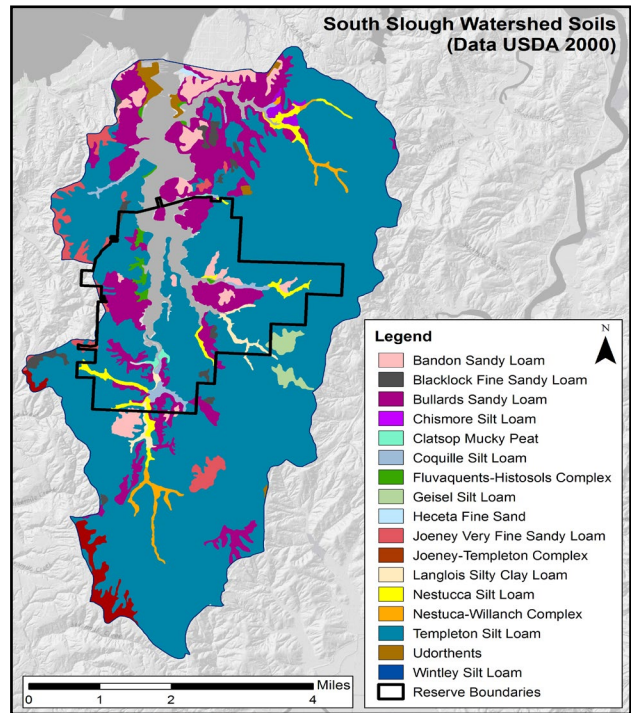


Figure 2.7: Distribution of soil types in the South Slough watershed, grouped by series (e.g., Bandon Sandy loam 0-7% slopes and Bandon Sandy Loam 7-12% slopes were grouped as Bandon Sandy Loam). Data USDA 2000.

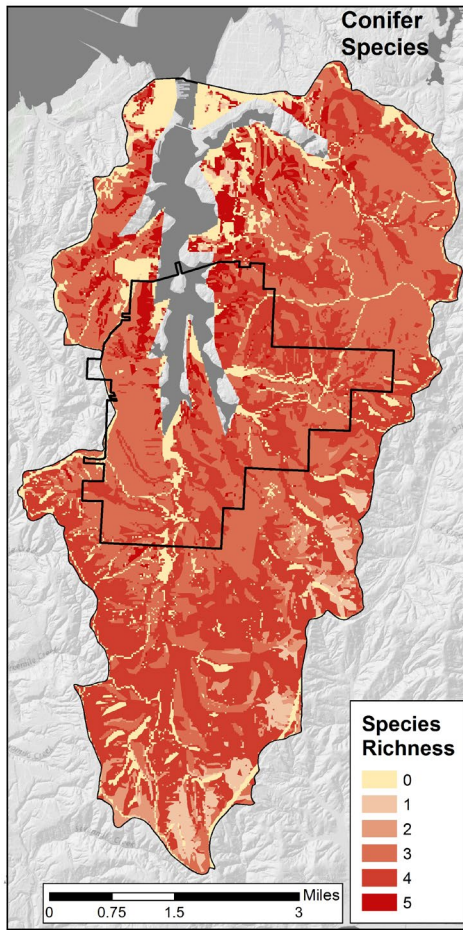
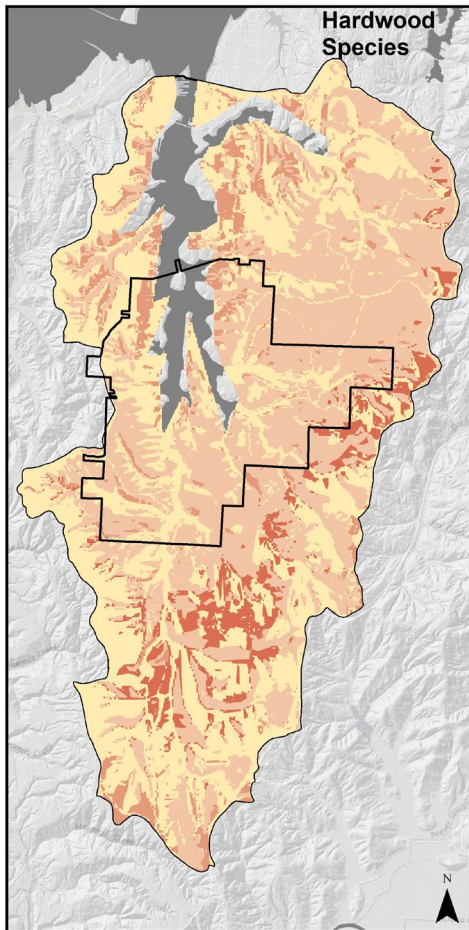


Figure 2.8 (both maps to the left): Conifer and hardwood tree species richness in the South Slough watershed. Lighter colors indicate fewer species counts than darker colors. Conifer species include but are not limited to: Douglas-fir, Port Orford cedar, incense cedar, western redcedar, western hemlock, shore pine, white fir, grand fir, and Sitka spruce. Hardwood species include but are not limited to: red alder, white alder, bay laurel, vine maple, and bigleaf maple. Black outline delineates Reserve boundary. Data: LEMMA 2014

- The Reserve contains sand flats off the northwest corner of Valino Island and along Long Island Point’s western shore.
- In late summer, up to 160 acres (64.74 ha.) of eelgrass may be found in the Reserve, with additional beds of unknown size in the northern part of the slough beyond the administrative boundary (Rumrill 2006) (Figure 2.10).
- Table 2.1 contains common species and species of concern for the main habitat types within the Reserve.

For more information about ecological attributes of the South Slough, reference the site profile of the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve (Rumrill 2009): https://coast.noaa.gov/data/docs/nerrs/Reserves_SOS_SiteProfile.pdf

For more information about the state of the South Slough watershed, reference the State of the South Slough and Coastal Frontal Watersheds (Cornu et al. 2012): <http://www.partnershipforcoastalwatersheds.org/watersheds/>

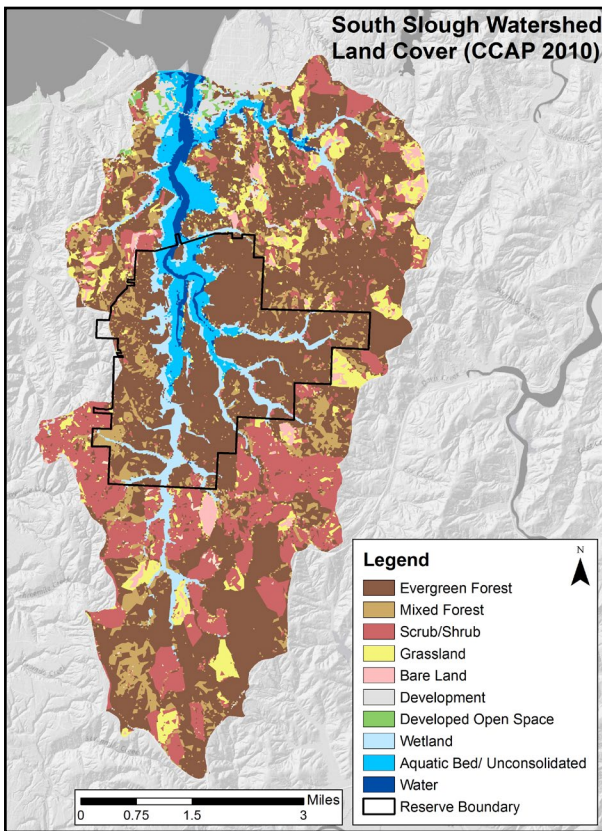


Figure 2.9: Land cover patterns in the South Slough watershed. Note the difference in land cover within the Reserve boundary (outlined in black) compared to outside of it. Scrub/shrub cover describes areas dominated by shrubs less than 5 m tall. When forests are harvested using clear-cut methods, re-growth of young trees are classified as scrub/shrub. Data: CCAP 2014

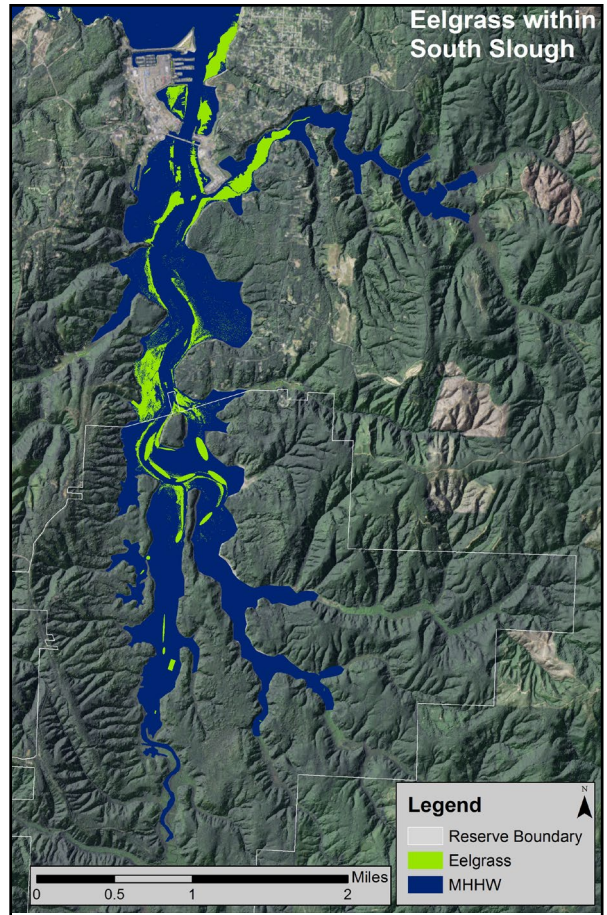


Figure 2.10: Distribution of eelgrass beds in the South Slough estuary. Eelgrass species include the native *Zostera marina*, and the non-native *Zostera japonica*. Data: Clinton et al. 2007.

Table 2.1: Common species found in the Reserve, both plant and animal, for each main habitat type. Species of Concern are also included.

Key Species in the Reserve			
Upland	Marsh (fresh and tidal)	Aquatic	Species of Special Concern
Evergreen huckleberry (<i>Vaccinium ovatum</i>)	American beaver (<i>Castor canadensis</i>)	Cutthroat trout (<i>Oncorhynchus clarkii</i>)	Coho salmon (<i>Oncorhynchus kisutch</i>)
Pacific sword fern (<i>Polystichum munitum</i>)	Baltic rush (<i>Juncus balticus</i>)	Dungeness crabs (juvenile) (<i>Metacarcinus magister</i>)	Marbled murrelet (<i>Brachyramphus marmoratus</i>)
Port Orford cedar (<i>Chamaecyparis lawsoniana</i>)	Fleshy jaumea (<i>Jaumea carnosa</i>)	Eelgrass (<i>Zostera marina</i>)	Mud shrimp (<i>Upogebia pugettensis</i>)
Roosevelt elk (<i>Cervus canadensis roosevelti</i>)	Lyngby's sedge (<i>Carex lyngbyei</i>)	Pacific lamprey (<i>Entosphenus tridentatus</i>)	Salt-marsh bird's beak (<i>Chloropyron maritimum palustre</i>)
Salal (<i>Gaultheria shallon</i>)	Pacific silverweed (<i>Potentilla anserina</i>)	Steelhead/Rainbow trout (<i>Oncorhynchus mykiss</i>)	Western bog lily (<i>Lilium occidentale</i>)
Salmonberry (<i>Rubus parviflorus</i>)	Pickleweed (<i>Sarcocornia perennis</i>)	Western brook lamprey (<i>Lampetra richardsoni</i>)	
Sitka spruce (<i>Picea sitchensis</i>)	Salt grass (<i>Distichlis spicata</i>)		
	Seaside arrowgrass (<i>Triglochin maritima</i>)		
	Skunk cabbage (<i>Lysichiton americanus</i>)		
	Slough sedge (<i>Carex obnupta</i>)		
	Tufted hairgrass (<i>Deschampsia caespitosa</i>)		

Social Attributes

The 2010 U. S. Census Bureau estimated that 63,043 residents live in Coos County—nearly one-third of Oregon’s coastal population. The shoreline of the Coos estuary is bordered by the municipalities of Charleston, Barview, North Bend, Coos Bay, Millington, Eastside, and Glasgow (Figure 2.11). The cities of Coos Bay and North Bend form the economic heart of the county. Collectively, they have about 25,662 residents (U. S. Census Bureau, 2010), making the area the largest population center on the Oregon coast.

The population surrounding the Reserve is predominately Caucasian (91.1%) and according to the U.S. Census Bureau, 17.6% of Coos County lives under the poverty level with 22.9% of these citizens under the age of 18. Unfortunately, the average annual wage in the area

is one of the lowest in Oregon. The area has struggled with school district consolidations and closures over the last two decades and educational analyses indicate that school districts are still not meeting performance benchmarks (Cornu & Souder 2015).

In a 2014 community report that used Sustainability Tools for Assessing and Rating (STAR) various community aspects, the Coos Bay area ranked high when it came to having sufficient built environments and health and safety services. However, overall the community surrounding the Reserve ranked moderate in economic health, living-wage job availability, equity of social services, and in protecting natural systems. The area ranked poorly on climate adaptation, greenhouse gas mitigation, resource efficiency, and in access to education, art and cultural industries, and community cohesion (Cornu & Souder 2015).

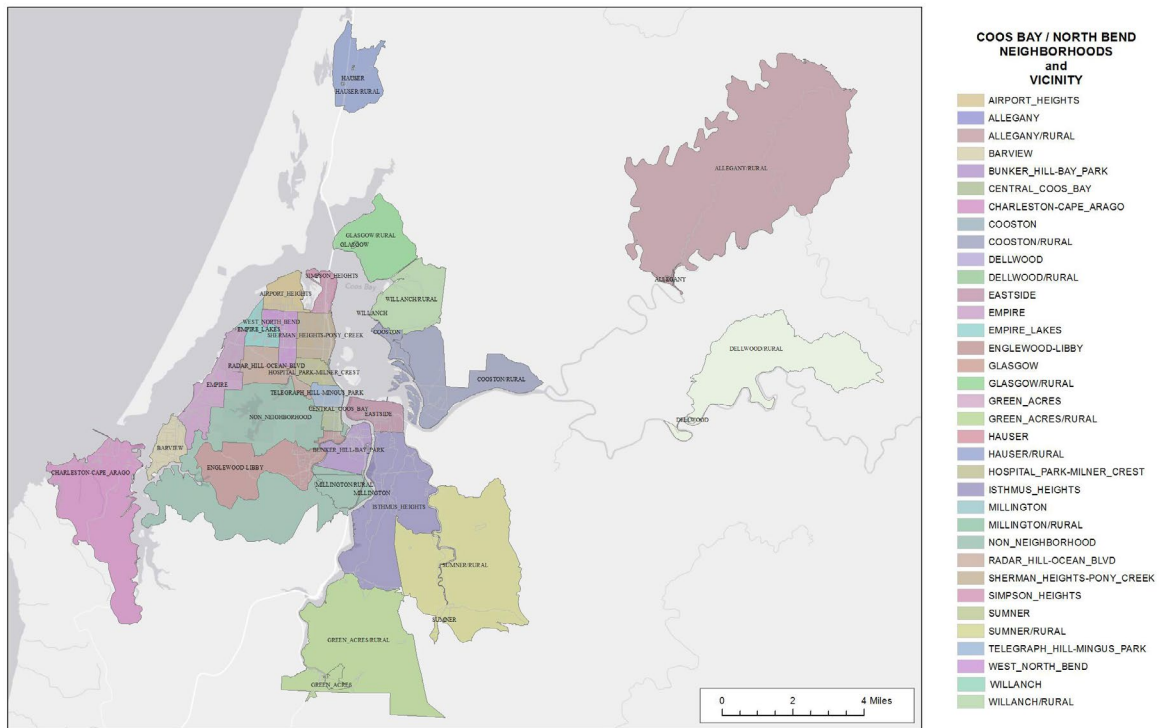


Figure 2.11: Neighborhoods in the Coos Bay-North Bend area.

Industry and Resource Use

To support an industrial center and shipping port, the navigational channel of the Coos estuary is routinely dredged to maintain adequate depths for commercial shipping. Other area industries include commercial fishing, seafood processing, wood product industries, healthcare, and tourism.

Commercial fishing supports a number of seafood processing plants in Charleston. Additionally, the Oregon Department of Agriculture leases several thousand acres of state-owned submerged lands in the Coos and South Slough estuary for commercial oyster cultivation. The presence of the commercial oyster industry and recreational clam harvest in the estuary encourages maintenance of excellent water quality.

Timber extraction has also been a primary industry in the Coos areas since Euro-American settlement. Within the South Slough watershed, approximately 70% of land is in private or county ownership, with most of these lands actively managed for timber production. Approximately 5% of the South Slough watershed is zoned for rural residential occupation. The remaining 4,771 acres (one-quarter of the watershed) comprise the Reserve.

Overall, the economic base of the Coos area is in a state of transition. For more than one hundred years after Euro-Americans arrived, the ocean and once dense forests of the Coos watershed supported large-scale commercial fishing, logging, and shipping operations. However, as these resources declined, so have their related businesses, resulting in an

uncertain economic future for the region. Many of the younger generations continue to move outside of the area to find gainful employment. At the same time, recreation and tourism are growth industries in the region. Retirees are also gravitating to the southern Oregon coast, and passive income (i.e., payments from pension plans, social security, stock investments) is a significant component of the area economy.

Archeological and Cultural Resources

Native Peoples

Archeological evidence indicates that the Coos estuary has supported a human population for at least 6,000 years. Along the shores of the South Slough, the Miluk people occupied small villages and seasonal camps. The Miluk villages were nearly autonomous gatherings of around 100 people. Permanent dwellings were typically pole frame lodge structures made with split cedar planks and partially set into the ground such that the floor was below ground level.

The Miluk people hunted, fished, and gathered all the food and fiber needed for subsistence. Wooden fish weirs, antler hooks, and nets were used to catch a variety of fish; elk and deer were trapped in large pits. Middens found along the shores of South Slough provide evidence that the estuary was a productive place to collect crabs and other shellfish. Berries, seaweed, and edible plants and roots added nutrition and variety to the diet of native peoples. The remains of several villages, wooden fish weirs, and middens still exist along Coos estuary shorelines, but in many cases have been buried or substantially disturbed by more recent human development.

When early Euro-American settlers arrived in the South Slough area during the 1850's, the Miluk speaking people lived in the southern part of the Coos estuary. Their area extended west to the ocean and south to the mouth of the Coquille River. The northern parts of the Coos estuary, along the Coos River, and areas as far north as Tenmile Creek were inhabited by the Hanis. The languages of the Miluk and Hanis people are both included in the Coos family of the Penutian family of languages. South and east of the Miluk area and extending into the upper Coquille watershed lived people who spoke one of the Athabaskan languages, thereby distinguishing them from the Hanis and Miluk people. The descendants of the Coos peoples and other neighboring tribes now comprise the Confederated Tribes of the Coos, Lower Umpqua and Siuslaw Indians. The descendants of the Athabaskan speaking people in the area now comprise the Coquille Indian Tribe. Soon after Euro-American settlement, the original inhabitants of the South Slough area were at first forbidden to own land and were later forcefully removed from the region.

Eventually, in the 1870s, land was surveyed and divided up into allotments which were granted to "eligible Indians" (Tribal Members or the head of household for an eligible Tribal family). Eligible individuals could select an authorized parcel or one could be assigned to them. Although allotments provided Tribal peoples with land after their forceful removal, the Euro-American concept of parcel designation also perpetuated Tribal assimilation into Euro-American culture. Under the allotment program, Tribal families made new homes along South Slough or its tributaries. These families' names:

Wasson, Talbot, Elliott, Younker, Hanson, survive as place names for creeks, points and coves in the South Slough watershed (Caldera 2006).

Euro-American Colonization

Euro-American explorers came to the Coos estuary in the late 1700s and permanent settlement began in the 1850s. Due in part to a small gold rush in the 1850s, aggressive displacement of the native inhabitants ramped up. Euro-American settlement introduced homesteads, farms, logging operations, and commercial fishing to the area.



Figure 2.12: Euro-American settlers on a horse-drawn railcar.

Some of the most significant changes in the Coos estuary landscape were initiated in the late 1800s to support the new settlers' way of life. The town of Coos Bay (then Marshfield) was incorporated in 1874. At the convergence of the Coos and South Slough estuaries, the small fishing village of Charleston developed in the late 1880s. Stabilization of the bay mouth was initiated in the late 1880s, and marshes were filled and forests logged to support local families in agriculture and marine commerce. Coal was mined in small amounts from 1854 to 1920.

Houses, barns, windmills, a school house, and other structures were built in the coves and low hills of the South Slough watershed through the 1920s, although settlement was never dense. Families supported themselves by logging and ranching, sometimes on a substantial scale. Transportation to and from slough homesteads was almost entirely by boat, and dependent on favorable tides (Caldera 2006).

Valino Island was the site of a speakeasy during Prohibition, but no physical structures remain visible there today. Many of the early buildings and homesteads in the watershed were abandoned during the Depression and have collapsed or been razed. The sites of several older buildings, including an old schoolhouse and a shake mill, are known, but are now indicated only by small piles of decaying lumber. Two of the last buildings of this period still standing in the South Slough watershed are the Fredrickson house and shed.

Cultural resource protection in the Reserve

Reserve staff works closely with both the Coquille Tribe and the Confederated Tribes of the Coos, Lower Umpqua, and Siuslaw Indians, as well as with the Oregon State Historic Preservation Office, to plan, document, and protect cultural resources in the Reserve. The Reserve also works with federal partners to support cultural resource protection via compliance with Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act. Projects in the Reserve incorporate archeological consultations and cultural planning before implementation. Some projects in the Reserve are entirely for the purpose of cultural restoration, such as the recent refurbishment of the Fredrickson shed.

Threats and Stressors

Natural stressors

Invasions by non-native, noxious plant and animal species, including terrestrial, wetland, and aquatic species, pose a threat to the Reserve and will continue to do so for the foreseeable future. Invasive species often enter the Reserve as accidental passengers during human transport. Species of particular concern include gorse (*Ulex europaeus*), English ivy (*Hedera helix*), reed canary grass (*Phalaris arundinacea*) (Figure 2.13), *Spartina* spp., and green crabs (*Carcinus maenas*). Although some invasive species are not yet present here or occur in low numbers, the Reserve is motivated to minimize their damaging effects early. Presence of invasive species may go unnoticed for some time, and noxious species jeopardize biodiversity, habitat quality, and the economy.



Figure 2.13: Field of invasive reed canary grass in the Wasson Creek. Reed canary grass is an aggressive invader that outcompetes native wetland plant species, often approaching 75-100% cover in the areas it invades (Houlahan and Findlay 2004, Mulhouse and Galatowitsch 2003).

Two major upland pathogens serve as stressors to trees in the Reserve. Swiss needle cast is caused by a fungal infection (*Phaeocryptopus gaeumannii*) in Douglas-fir trees. The infection causes Douglas-fir needles to yellow and prematurely shed, reducing tree growth. Port Orford cedar root rot (*Phytophthora lateralis*) also affects the Reserve as a non-native soil-borne pathogen, infecting Port Orford cedars, and to a lesser extent Pacific yews (Goheen and Willhite 2006). The root rot moves up the tree via evapotranspiration and kills the inner bark, often resulting in complete mortality to Port Orford cedars.

Wildfire is another stressor that threatens the Reserve. As the climate shifts to hotter and drier conditions, and unmanaged growth continues in the uplands, a wildfire originating in the Reserve or its neighboring forest poses a potential risk to the overall health of the South Slough ecosystem, facilities, and bordering lands.

The Reserve and the Coos Bay region sit astride the slow collision of tectonic plates that form the Cascadia subduction zone. This zone is the source of frequent minor earthquakes and occasional, powerful sub earthquakes. It lies parallel to the coast of the lower Columbian biogeographic region, roughly 150 to 400 miles offshore. The stressors of earthquakes are linked to the added threat of tsunamis.

Anthropogenic stressors

Oil or chemical spills, or accidents involving hazardous materials shipped to or from the International Port of Coos Bay, are anthropogenic stressors that could drastically impact the Reserve. Strong tidal currents

render South Slough particularly vulnerable to any water-borne spills during flood tide.

Additionally, the South Slough estuary receives a variety of direct point and non-point source pollutants. Point source water pollution ranges from that generated by waterside businesses in Charleston (e.g. fish processing plant outfalls) to occasional actions by private individuals along the shoreline or aboard boats. Non-point source pollutants enter the estuary indirectly as components of road runoff and runoff from rural and urban activities and industrial sites.

The North Bend Water Board supplies drinking water throughout Coos Bay from reservoirs on Pony Creek and Joe Ney Slough. The board's right to water from Winchester Creek is senior to the Reserve's right to keep water in the stream to protect fish. In 2013, the board informed the Reserve Management Commission that it intended to seek additional sources of fresh water to meet growing residential and commercial demand; it may exercise its right to water from Winchester Creek if other sources prove unfeasible.



Figure 2.14: A yarder, which uses a system of cables to pull felled logs up to the landing where they can be processed for transport.

Though commercial timber harvesters try to be conscious of their impact on the environment, the Reserve experiences stressors associated

with timber harvest, including habitat fragmentation (upland and in-stream); contamination by herbicides and pesticides; habitat homogenization (e.g. reproduction stands); and sedimentation.

Illegal uses can also be a threat to the Reserve. Dumping, littering, and target shooting are constant problems within the Reserve. Occasionally, people deface Reserve structures and signs. Other anthropogenic stressors include increased shoreline development surrounding the Reserve; forest product theft; nearby channel dredging and its associated impacts on sediment movement, water quality, and habitat.

Climate phenomena, impacts, and Reserve sensitivity

There are two cyclic climate phenomena that affect the Reserve. The El Niño Southern Oscillation occurs every two to seven years and causes an increase in ocean temperatures and a decrease in precipitation, though it can sometimes lead to more powerful winter storms and thus flooding. The Pacific Decadal Oscillation experiences both positive and negative phases which switch every few decades. Locally, a positive phase results in warmer ocean temperatures, and a negative phase results in cooler ocean temperatures (Cornu and Souder 2015).

Climate change impacts in Oregon include warming air temperatures, increasing acidity in nearshore marine waters, increased storminess, and increasing water temperatures (Cornu and Souder 2015). Precipitation and atmospheric weather patterns are also changing. Sea levels are rising along portions of the Oregon coast, a process which may

be either offset or exacerbated by uplift or subsidence of local coastal margins (Cornu and Souder 2015). Ruggiero et al. (2010) reported that the estimated long term rate of coastal wetland loss, due to rising seas, is greater for the Pacific coast than any other areas of the U.S.

In a report by Trueblood and colleagues on *Climate Sensitivity of the National Estuarine Research Reserve System* (2013), the Reserve and its surrounding area ranked very high on social sensitivity to climate change impacts, but also ranked high in ecological resiliency. The high social sensitivity ranking stems from the area's low per capita income and other socioeconomic barriers, including dependency on natural resource extractive industries. This dependency may limit the community's ability to rapidly respond to climate impacts as they occur (Trueblood et al. 2013).

For more information on stressors see the Reserve's Disaster Response Plan (2015).

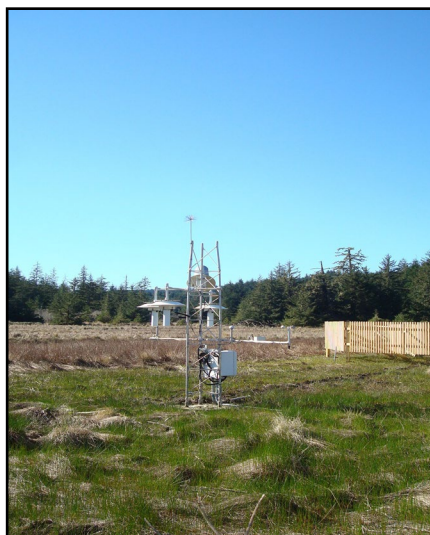


Figure 2.15: A Climate Reference Network (CRN) station located in the Reserve's Fredrickson Marsh. This station is part of a NOAA program to monitor long-term changes in precipitation and temperature. The CRN station also has secondary sensors to monitor wind speed, relative humidity, and solar radiation. It was installed in 2008.

Boundaries & Land Use

The area of land that comprises the South Slough watershed is roughly shield-shaped and approximately twice as long as the slough waterbody itself (see Figure 2.4). The South Slough watershed is dominated by steep, forested slopes; defined on the east, south, and west by prominent ridges with numerous small streams draining into South Slough. Major sections of the estuarine shoreline are bounded by sandy bluffs. The southern half of the watershed, beyond the Reserve boundaries, contains the springs and creeks which feed Winchester Creek, the slough's largest tributary stream.

The northern administrative boundary of the Reserve crosses the slough immediately north of Valino Island. The rest of the boundary stair steps through the watershed; to the west is Seven Devil's Road, to the south and east are county and private forestlands.

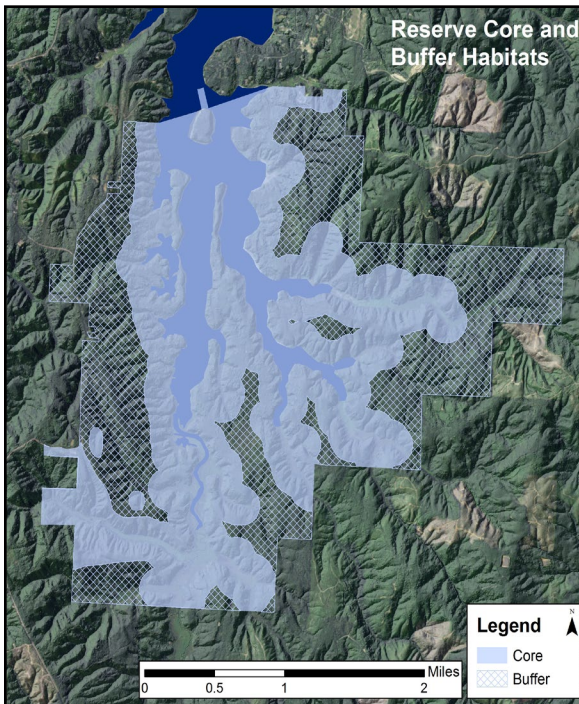


Figure 2.16: Lands within Reserve boundaries categorized as core or buffer habitats.

Core and Buffer

For the purposes of this plan, Reserve lands are categorized into two zones: core (3,055 acres) and buffer (1,716 acres) (Figure 2.16).

The core includes:

- All estuarine waters, lowlands, and wetlands in the Reserve. Much of the Reserve's research is focused on these areas and they are considered key habitat in the Reserve.
- The riparian corridors surrounding the estuary and waterways. Though definitions for these areas are flexible, this plan defined riparian corridors as .125 mi from a predicted 4ft sea level rise mark (Cornu and Souder 2015, USDOC 2012) in order to fully include areas adjacent to and affected by the waterways. These areas are integral to the function of lowlands and waterways.
- Forested uplands within .125 mi of the predicted 4ft sea level rise mark. Forested uplands are the most prevalent habitat type in the Reserve.
- Port Orford cedar research sites.
- The Wasson Creek drainage. As the location of upcoming research, restoration, and monitoring efforts, this area is central to ongoing programs at the Reserve.

The buffer is primarily forested uplands. Although the Reserve considers the entirety of Reserve lands as "core" to programs and habitat protection, the forested uplands do provide considerable buffer to the lowlands and estuarine waters. The upland buffer also includes the Interpretive Center and most of the Reserve's trails.

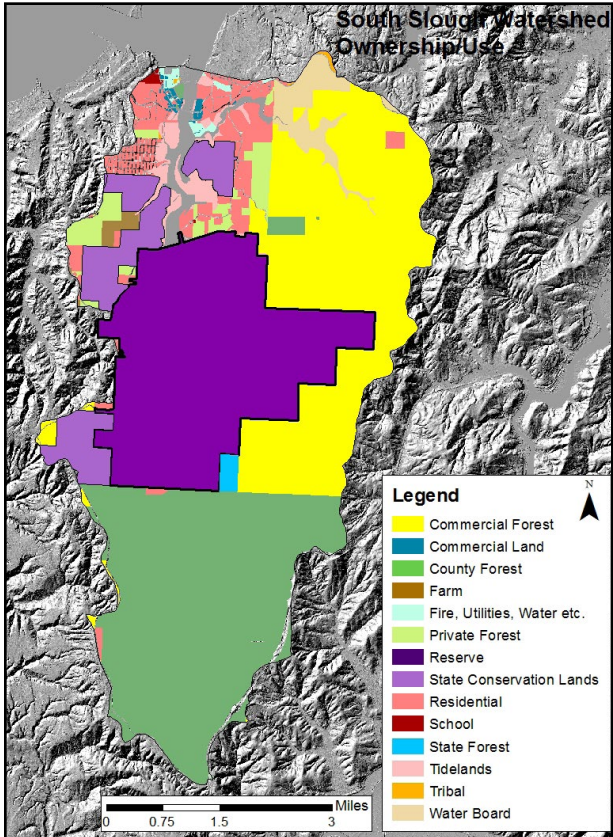


Figure 2.17: Ownership and uses of land within the South Slough watershed.

Land ownership & use

All 4,771 acres of land within the Reserve are owned by the Oregon Department of State Lands. Land within the Reserve is used for the purposes of research, education, and stewardship. Land ownership and use adjacent to the Reserve is mostly forest managed for commercial timber production, especially to the south and east. The lands along the western and northeastern Reserve boundary abut privately owned and mostly residential parcels, while the privately owned lands to the north of the Reserve also include small businesses in Charleston (Figure 2.17).

References:

- Caldera, M. J. (Ed.). (2006). *South Slough Adventures: Life on a Southern Oregon Estuary*. Second edition. Palm Springs, CA: Watchmaker Publishing.
- Clinton, P. J., Young, D.R., Specht, D.T., and Lee H. (2007). A Guide to Mapping Intertidal Eelgrass and Nonvegetated Habitats in Estuaries of the Pacific Northwest USA, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C., EPA/600/R-07/062, 2007
- Coastal Change Analysis Program (C-CAP). (2014). C-CAP FTP Download, GIS data files, viewed 23 October 2014: <http://coast.noaa.gov/ccapftp/>
- Cooper, M. (2012). Competing stakeholders look forward to estuary model. Cascade: UO College of Arts and Sciences, Fall 2012. Accessed 22 September, 2015. <http://cascade.uoregon.edu/fall2012/natural-sciences/competing-stakeholders/>
- Cornu, C.E., Souder, J., Hamilton, J., Helms, A., Rimler, R., Joyce, B., Reasor, F., Pedersen, T., Wright, E., Namitz, R., Bragg, J., and Tanner, B. (2012). Partnership for Coastal Watersheds Stats of the South Slough and Coastal Frontal Watersheds. Report prepared for the Partnership for Coastal Watersheds Steering Committee. South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve and Coos Watershed Association. p.225
- Cornu, C. E. and Souder, J. (Eds.). (2015). Communities, Lands & Waterways Data Source. Partnership for Coastal Watersheds, South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve, and Coos Watershed Association. Coos Bay, OR.
- Dello, K. D. and Mote, P.W. (Eds.). (2010). Oregon Climate Assessment Report. Oregon Climate Change Research Institute. College of Oceanic and Atmospheric Sciences, Oregon State University. Corvallis, OR.
- Goheen, E.M. and Willhite, E.A. (2006). *Field guide to the common diseases and insect pests of Oregon and Washington conifers*. R6-NR-FID-PR-01-06. Portland, OR: USDA Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Region. 327 p.
- Houlahan, J. E. and Findlay, C. S. (2004). Effect of invasive plant species on temperate wetland plant diversity. *Conservation Biology* 18(4): 1132-1138.
- Juza, H. K. (1995). Water quality model for South Slough, Coos Bay, Oregon. Master's thesis. Portland State University. 107 pp.
- Landscape Ecology, Modeling, Mapping and Analysis (LEMMA). (2014). GNN Species Maps, GIS data files, viewed 4 December 2014: <http://lemma.forestry.oregonstate.edu/data/species-maps>
- Mulhouse, J. M. and Galatowitsch, S. M. (2003). Revegetation of prairie pothole wetlands in the mid-continental US: twelve years post-reflooding. *Plant Ecology*, 169, 143–159.
- Oregon Department of Forestry (ODF). n.d. GIS Data Export, accessed 11 May 2015: <http://www.oregon.gov/odf/Pages/gis/GISDataExport.aspx>

Oregon Department of Geology and Mineral Industries (DOGAMI). (2009). Oregon Geologic Data Compilation. Accessed 26 October 2015: <http://spatialdata.oregonexplorer.info/geoportal/catalog/search/resource/details.page?uuid=%7BD9B42C23-07E9-496F-8188-7C06A6D0E891%7D>

Robinson, J. (2009). Upper Watershed Restoration Action Plan. South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve. Charleston, OR. 107 p.

Roegner, G.C. and Shanks, A.L. (2001). Import of coastally-derived chlorophyll a to South Slough, Oregon. *Estuaries*. 24: 244-256.

Ruggiero, P., Brown, C. A., Komar, P.D., Allan, J.C., Reusser, D.A. and Lee, H. II. (2010). Impacts of climate change on Oregon's coasts and estuaries. Oregon Climate Change Research Institute, OR.

Rumrill, S.S. (2006). The Ecology of the South Slough Estuary: Site Profile of the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve. South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve. Charleston, OR. 238 p.

South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve. Oregon Department of State Lands. (2015). Disaster Response Plan. http://www.oregon.gov/dsl/SS/Documents/SSNERR_DRP_FINAL2015.pdf

Trueblood, D., Robinson, P., Curtis, K., Gao, J., Genskow, K., Jones, J., Veroff, D., Leight, A.K., Martino, E., and Wood, B. (2013). Climate Sensitivity of the National Estuarine Research Reserve System. Report to NOAA's Climate Program Office., 79 p.

U. S. Census Bureau. (2010). Coos County Quickfacts. Accessed August 2015. <http://quickfacts.census.gov/qfd/states/41/41011.html>

U. S. Department of Agriculture (USDA). (2000). Soil Survey Geographic (SSURGO) Database for Coos County, Oregon. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Natural Resources Conservation Service, Fort Worth, Texas.

U.S. Department of Commerce (USDOC). (2012). NOAA Coastal Services Center Sea Level Rise Data: 1-6 ft Sea Level rise Inundation Extent. Accessed 19 June 2015: <http://coast.noaa.gov/digitalcoast/tools/slr>

U.S. Geological Survey (USGS). (2005). Fault Lines. Accessed 26 October 2013: <http://spatialdata.oregonexplorer.info/geoportal/catalog/search/resource/details.page?uuid=%7B99AA3A13-0354-4579-A0D4-463C433D6952%7>

Chapter 3: Reserve Strategic Plan

The 2017-2022 strategic plan for the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve (Reserve) was guided by a suite of partnerships, professional exchanges, and a long-term engaged presence in the communities that surrounds South Slough. NOAA's current strategic plan for the National Estuarine Research Reserve System (Reserve System), along with current Reserve System national priorities, also framed the design. Staff consulted working partners, coastal decision makers, regional educators, and natural resource managers. Staff also reviewed ongoing research and met numerous times during development to refine the Reserve's strategic plan. As a result of the collaborative process, the Reserve identified climate change, habitat protection, and invasive species as the top priorities for the 2017-2022 period.

Alignment with other strategic targets

The current Reserve System strategic plan, for all national research reserves, identifies system priorities as environmental change, habitat protection and water quality. The South Slough Reserve identified each of these priorities as highly relevant as well and aligned the 2017-2022 plan directly to climate change and habitat protection foci. However, as a Reserve with a long-standing and well established water quality monitoring program, this priority was already threaded throughout many Reserve projects and priorities. This plan is designed to expand the applications of the water quality monitoring program and thus water quality is integrated into the goals, objectives and actions below.

The Reserve also spent time aligning the 2017-2022 strategic plan to established (2014) evaluation metrics compliant to Section 312 of the Coastal Zone Management Act. For the Reserve, these include increasing formal education contact hours by ten percent, implementing at least eight research and monitoring projects that address coastal management issues, and providing at least six opportunities for community involvement in the control of invasive species. While these targets are on a shorter timeline than this five year plan, they are represented in the strategic plan to identify the desired impacts Reserve programs will make during this management plan period.

Overarching outcomes and aims for 2017-2022

One overarching desired outcome of Reserve work over the next five years is that programs will help increase local and regional understanding of climate change, habitat protection, and invasive species. For the education program, a desired outcome is improving students' and teachers' understanding of priority issues. For research and stewardship, outcomes include contributions to the scientific community in climate science and habitat restoration monitoring, in addition to the development of a framework for early detection and rapid response regarding invasive species. For the Coastal Training Program, desired outcomes include increased use of science-based information by coastal decision makers when evaluating management options related to priority issues. While the 2017-2022 strategic plan details

explicit goals, objectives, and actions for the planning period, the Reserve does not want to lose the broader aims of programmatic endeavors. The following bullet points provide an overview of the enduring Reserve goals:

- Advance scientific understanding of the South Slough, Coos Bay, and other Pacific Northwest estuaries and coastal watersheds through research, monitoring, and education.
- Provide technical assistance and advisory services for the effective management of estuaries and coastal watersheds.
- Use innovative programming and delivery to increase understanding of estuarine and coastal watershed ecosystems.
- Evaluate, manage and restore (if possible) the habitats and ecosystem processes within the South Slough Reserve, and collaborate with local, regional and national organizations on estuarine and coastal watershed projects.
- Maintain public access to the Reserve through exceptional facilities and trails, using innovative design and construction methods that minimize ecological impacts.
- Evaluate education program effectiveness in reaching key audiences and addressing priority issues.



Context for the 2017-2022 strategic plan design

In order for this strategic plan to be the most effective and comprehensive guidance document for the Reserve, detailed actions are included in the plan. Although these actions do not embody the entirety of steps that will be made toward achieving objectives and goals, they are included to provide clarification and guidance for staff and readers alike. The actions are fundamental for helping staff take steps in achieving Reserve objectives and goals over the next five years and hopefully provide insight on how the Reserve plans to address priorities.

Finally, it is important to note that priorities for the 2017-2022 strategic plan are not sector based. The research, education, coastal training, stewardship, public involvement, and administration programs of the Reserve work in a fully integrated fashion to address Reserve priorities. Each of the goals, objectives, and actions outlined in the strategic plan has a symbol to indicate the lead or co-lead sectors for the line item, but by no means does this reflect the scope of contributors to the effort. Furthermore, the implementation of the strategic plan would not be possible without the support of Reserve administration, facilities staff, volunteers, and interns. Although they are not explicitly noted as a lead on strategic line items, their influence is integral. Ultimately each component of the 2017-2022 strategic plan is designed to uphold the vision, mission, and core principles of the Reserve; an unachievable task without the integrated efforts of all sectors.

Figure 3.1: Canoe paddle trip with Reserve partners and stakeholders, including staff and members of the Coquille Indian Tribe and the Confederated Tribes of the Coos, Lower Umpqua, and Siuslaw Indians.

Reserve Priority Coastal Management Issues

Climate Change

The Oregon coast is vulnerable to many climate related changes, particularly sea level rise and changes in ocean acidity (pH). In the Coos estuary, the fate of built environments (e.g. roads, hardened shorelines) and ecosystems (e.g. tidal wetlands, eelgrass beds) is unknown as sea levels change. An increase in sea level may influence habitat and species distributions as well as infrastructure, which concerns commercial economies, coastal accessibility, and human safety. Decreasing ocean pH (acidification) is also a local concern, as it has serious implications for water quality, shellfish industries and ecosystem services. Ocean acidification has already had noticeable effects in the Pacific Northwest, including impairment of shellfish production in Netarts Bay and Willapa Bay (Rumrill 2006).

Habitat Protection

Habitat protection is important for sustaining the ecological integrity of the estuary and for protecting the Reserve for long-term scientific and educational uses. The Reserve and surrounding areas have a long history of human influence on ecosystems, from built infrastructure to industrial timber harvest. Consequently, habitats in the South Slough watershed are fragmented. Reconnecting, protecting, and improving habitats for upland, lowland, aquatic, and threatened species will benefit Reserve resiliency, in addition to watershed health.

Vision, Mission, and Core Principles

Vision:

Resources developed at the South Slough Reserve will support the informed management of the Coos estuary and watershed, providing a model for regional, national, and global coastal management.

Mission:

To improve the understanding and stewardship of Pacific Northwest estuaries and coastal watersheds.

Core Principles:

- Strengthen the understanding of estuaries in the Pacific Northwest through increased knowledge about South Slough and the Coos estuary.
- Solicit and incorporate the advice and partnership of others.
- Prioritize stewardship of the South Slough estuary.
- Develop projects to advance multiple Reserve goals.
- Structure Reserve activities around key audiences and themes.

Invasive Species

The South Slough Site Profile (Rumrill 2006) identifies invasive species as one of the largest threats to the biodiversity and ecological integrity of the estuary. Over 100 non-native aquatic species and nearly 50 invasive terrestrial species have been documented in the Coos estuary and lower watershed. Movement of

cargo ships and recreational boats through Coos harbor, as well as commercial fishing, aquaculture, and resource extraction create continual opportunities for the introduction of non-native and invasive species to the area. These species have economic implications (e.g. tree mortality from Port Orford cedar root-rot), and habitat implications (e.g. displacement of native wetland plant communities with reed canary grass).

Climate change, habitat protection, and invasive species are locally relevant topics with long-term socioeconomic and environmental implications. The Reserve is primed to help investigate these topics at a local scale, while contributing to greater understanding through regional and national networks. Due to the integrated and complex nature of these priority coastal management issues, these topics are set to drive Reserve research and education for the 2017-2022 period.

The symbols below reference which Reserve program will serve as the lead on strategic goals, objectives, and actions.

Symbols used in plan to signify sector lead(s):

Ⓜ = Research

ⓔ = Education

Ⓢ = Stewardship

Ⓒ = Coastal Training

Ⓟ = Public Involvement

Priority I: Climate Change

Goal 1: Increase Reserve understanding of the local effects of sea level rise. Ⓜ

Objective 1: By 2022, begin to characterize sedimentation and vertical accretion rates in Coos estuary tidal wetlands. Ⓜ

- Action 1: Use the Reserve's local geodetic control network to determine precise elevations of the water level sensors at all water quality stations of the System-wide Monitoring Program (SWMP) operated by the Reserve. Ⓜ
- Action 2: Quantify changes in tidal inundation regimes at key tidal wetlands in the estuary using long-term water level data from NOAA's tide stations, SWMP stations, and tribally managed water quality monitoring stations. Ⓜ
- Action 3: Collect sediment dynamics data at existing and newly established sites to quantify tidal wetland sedimentation and vertical accretion rates in the Coos estuary, including at Sentinel Site stations in the South Slough. Ⓜ
- Action 4: Coordinate the Reserve's development as a Sentinel Site within the NERR system. Ⓜ

Objective 2: By 2022, characterize the density and spatial distribution of tidal wetlands at the Reserve's Sentinel Site stations. Ⓜ

- Action 1: Complete an implementation plan to qualify the Reserve as a fully functional Sentinel Site within NOAA's Sentinel Site Program. Ⓜ

- Action 2: Map the spatial distribution of emergent marshes, eelgrass beds, and forested wetlands at Sentinel Site stations. ®
- Action 3: Collect percent cover, shoot density, and elevation data associated with emergent marsh plant communities, eelgrass beds, and forested wetlands at Sentinel Site stations (Figure 3.2). ®
- Action 4: Establish groundwater wells and groundwater level data loggers at Sentinel Site stations to characterize tidal wetland groundwater level regimes and quantify changes. ®
- Action 5: Evaluate relationships between plant community characteristics of tidal wetlands and water quality, elevation, groundwater level, sedimentation, vertical accretion, and tide level data. ®



Figure 3.2: Staffer Talo Silver assisting with Real-time Kinematic Surveys at Hidden Creek Marsh, to establish elevation changes in tidal wetlands.

Goal 2: Increase Reserve understanding of ocean acidification in the Pacific Northwest. ®

Objective 1: By 2021, begin characterizing water column carbon dynamics in the South Slough. ®

- Action 1: Establish and implement data collection protocols for partial pressure of carbon dioxide (pCO₂) and high resolution pH instruments deployed in the South Slough. ®
- Action 2: Analyze, summarize and distribute data from pCO₂ and pH instruments deployed in the South Slough. ®Ⓔ
- Action 3: Use data from the pCO₂ and pH sensors to help interpret long-term time series pH trends from the SWMP water quality stations in the South Slough. ®

- Action 4: Facilitate the collection and interpretation of data to help characterize ocean acidification in southern Oregon offshore and nearshore waters to inform results in the South Slough. ®

Goal 3: Increase Reserve understanding of the relationships between climate change and ecosystem functions in Pacific Northwest marine and estuarine environments. ®

Objective 1: Through the Partnership for Coastal Watersheds, facilitate the local development of a climate change vulnerability assessment for Coos Bay. © ®

- Action 1: Work with Partnership for Coastal Watersheds stakeholders to guide the development of the assessment. ® ©

- Action 2: Work with University of Oregon and other scientists to expand the capacity of the Coos estuary hydrodynamic model to test various climate change scenarios (Figure 3.3).[®]

- Action 3: Assist partners, including the Pacific Northwest Coastal Blue Carbon Working Group, to better understand climate change impacts on ecosystem services in coastal communities.[®] [©]

Objective 2: By 2022, begin to describe relationships between climate change and biological processes in the Coos estuary.[®]

Goal 4: Increase communications about actual and potential climate change impacts to diverse audiences. [®] [©]

- Action 1: Evaluate potential effects of changing water quality (i.e. pH, water temperature) and sea level rise on local biota, including native fish and shellfish.[®]
- Action 2: Work with partners, including the Pacific Northwest Coastal Blue Carbon Working Group, to quantify carbon stocks, sequestration rates, greenhouse gas emissions and ecosystem drivers in estuarine habitats.[®]

Objective 1: By 2020, strengthen Reserve staff skills in communicating about climate change.[®] [©]

- Action 1: Apply the National Network for Ocean and Climate Change Interpretation (NNOCCI) methods to staff trainings in climate interpretation.[®] [©]
- Action 2: Facilitate staff trainings on climate science, either in-house or by providing staff with opportunities to attend external climate science events.[®] [®] [©]

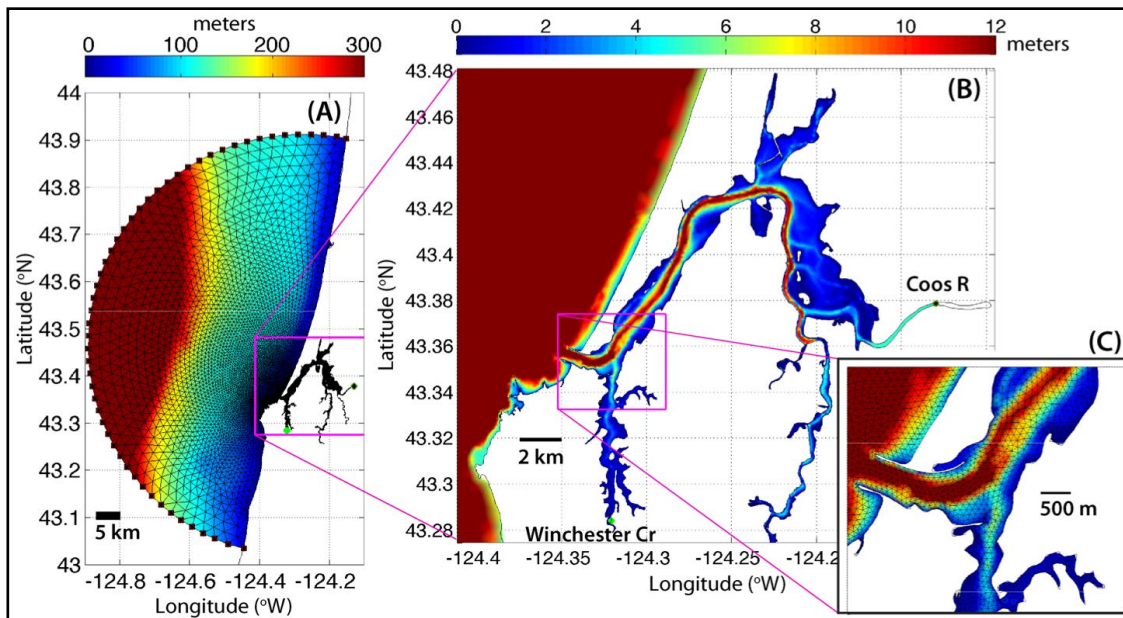


Figure 3.3: Prototype hydrodynamic model for the Coos estuary from University of Oregon professor David Sutherland. (A) Full model domain for preliminary runs showing grid cells (triangles) on top of bathymetry (color). Green dots indicate location of river inputs. (B) Zoom-in on boxed region in A, showing bathymetry of Coos Bay. Note color scale changes and model grid is omitted for clarity. (C) Zoom-in on boxed region in B, showing grid near the estuary mouth, with the same bathymetry color scale as B.

Objective 2: Assess the needs of coastal decision makers for information and trainings related to at least two climate change impacts and/or coastal resiliency issues. ©

- Action 1: Expand the coastal training target audience to include new local stakeholders, such as local business owners and associations, in need of information or trainings on climate issues. ©
- Action 2: Identify key climate and resiliency information and training needs. ©
- Action 3: In collaboration with stakeholders, design training or technical assistance to meet their needs. ©
- Action 4: Provide stakeholders with relevant climate and resiliency information and training opportunities. ©

Objective 3: By 2021, incorporate climate change research into at least four formal education programs. ©

- Action 1: Provide professional development workshops, including Teachers On the Estuary (TOTE), to help teachers incorporate climate change science into classrooms using new and existing curricula. ©
- Action 2: Facilitate the delivery of climate science results to K-12 students through NOAA's K-12 Estuary Education Program (KEEP). ©

- Action 3: Incorporate climate science curricula into formal education using Estuaries 101 and NOAA education products (Figure 3.4). ©
- Action 4: Develop new exhibits and publications that incorporate climate science and emphasize its implications for the Reserve. © ®
- Action 5: Incorporate local and regional climate change information into decision maker trainings. ©

Objective 4: By 2021, incorporate climate change research into at least two informal education activities. ©

- Action 1: Emphasize Reserve climate science research (including Sentinel Sites) and community level solutions at public outreach events. ©
- Action 2: Incorporate climate science into interpretive programming. ©
- Action 3: Add the Reserve's climate-related research (e.g. Sentinel Sites) to online educational portals. ©



Figure 3.4: School group learning about salt marsh habitats.

Priority 2: Habitat Protection

Goal 1: Assess and monitor habitats in the Coos estuary in order to characterize conditions and changes in habitat use and availability. ®

Objective 1: By 2019, create maps of the habitats within Reserve-managed lands. Ⓢ

- Action 1: Assess current maps and habitat data to determine data needs for mapping. ® Ⓢ
- Action 2: Work with partners to acquire information for habitat maps. ® Ⓢ
- Action 3: Utilize NOAA resources to support creating Reserve habitat maps. ® Ⓢ
- Action 4: Update and refine the Coastal and Marine Ecological Classification Standard (CMECS) maps for the Coos estuary. ® Ⓢ
- Action 5: Engage interns to assist staff with mapping and ground-truthing as part of their job-training experience. Ⓢ

Objective 2: By 2020, initiate a long-term strategy to monitor the effectiveness of Reserve restoration projects. ®

- Action 1: In conjunction with stakeholders, identify priority projects to monitor. ®
- Action 2: Refine protocols and metrics to quantify the effectiveness of previous and ongoing restoration work. ®
- Action 3: Continue to use ongoing SWMP water quality and Sentinel Site data to inform the effectiveness monitoring program and results. ®

- Action 4: Implement effectiveness monitoring for restoration projects as they are developed and funded. ®

Objective 3: In 2017, begin an annual monitoring program to track and evaluate the use of estuarine habitats by fish and invertebrate communities in the Coos estuary. ®

- Action 1: Quantify levels of habitat use by estuarine-dependent species in at least six locations of the Coos estuary. ®
- Action 2: Evaluate the use of estuarine habitats and tributaries by fish and invertebrate species. ®
- Action 3: By 2018, start identifying the environmental requirements and adaptive potential for fish assemblages and invertebrate species. ®
- Action 4: By 2018, begin to use water quality, habitat, and species assemblage data to make habitat use comparisons among study sites. ®

Goal 2: Continue to build the ridgetop-to-estuary habitat restoration program. Ⓢ

Objective 1: By 2018, develop a ridgetop-to-estuary restoration plan for the Wasson Creek Watershed Restoration Project. Ⓢ

- Action 1: Use data and stakeholder input to determine appropriate and effective restoration prescriptions. Ⓢ
- Action 2: Develop a funding strategy for restoration implementation. Ⓢ
- Action 3: Comply with local, regional, Tribal, and federal requirements in restoration implementation. Ⓢ

Objective 2: By 2021, begin to develop adaptive stewardship and restoration projects for Reserve priority areas. ©

- Action 1: In conjunction with stakeholders, identify high priority areas in need of stewardship and/or restoration project work (may include land acquisition & recreation planning). ©
- Action 2: Develop appropriate and adaptive plans. ©
- Action 3: Use Reserve administration and facilities resources to coordinate restoration and stewardship planning and implementation. ©

Goal 3: Increase public awareness of Reserve stewardship practices, habitat-related research, and habitat protection. ©

Objective 1: Incorporate habitat protection and restoration education into at least two Reserve outreach programs. ©

- Action 1: Assess the needs of restoration scientists and decision makers for information or training related to preserving or restoring habitat connectivity in coastal ecosystems. ©
- Action 2: Design and deliver needs based workshops to appropriate audiences, on restoration and/or habitat connectivity topics. ©
- Action 3: Develop and present restoration demonstrations to appropriate audiences based on projects at the Reserve. ©
- Action 4: Partner with local schools and universities to incorporate habitat protection and restoration education into natural resource programs. © ©

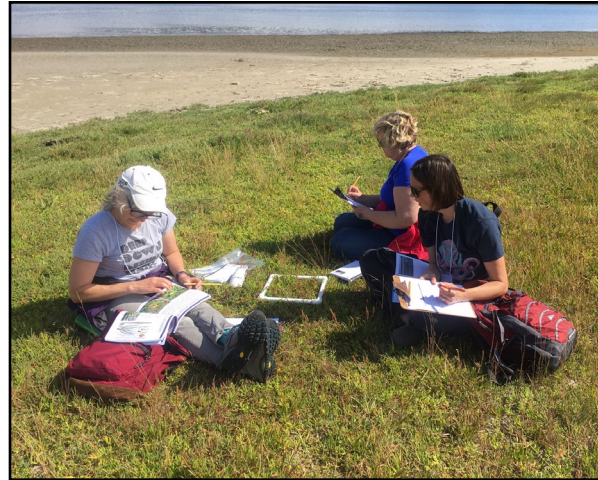


Figure 3.5: Teachers On the Estuary participants learning about wetland plant communities.

Objective 2: More fully incorporate the use of local data into at least two formal education pathways, to help illustrate connectivity of estuarine and marine habitats. ©

- Action 1: Using TOTE and other professional training opportunities, train teachers to understand and use data in their classrooms (Figure 3.5). ©
- Action 2: Increase the use of Reserve data in K-12 formal education programming. ©
- Action 3: Continue to improve the engagement of students and citizen scientists in data collection and monitoring. ©
- Action 4: Distribute Community, Lands, and Waterways environmental inventory information to users. © ®

Objective 3: Develop educational tools that build public awareness and engagement in stewardship practices at the Reserve. ⑥

- Action 1: Identify best practices that help staff reduce ecological impacts from special events and programs. ⑥
- Action 2: Improve interpretive signage at entries and along trails to reduce negative impacts of trail use, increase knowledge of habitat protection, and increase public stewardship of the Reserve. ⑤
- Action 3: Continue to incorporate habitat and water quality stewardship themes and practices into educational field trips. ⑥
- Action 4: Expand field trips to the Reserve to reach broader audiences, including decision-makers. ③
- Action 5: Develop informal programming for public outreach events to highlight habitat protection and stewardship practices in the Reserve. ④ ⑤



Figure 3.6: Invasive European green crabs (*Carcinus maenas*) captured in traps deployed to monitor population extent in the Coos estuary.

Priority 3: Invasive Species

Goal 1: Characterize and monitor the extent of invasive species affecting the Reserve. ⑧

Objective 1: By 2019, begin to map the presence and extent of invasive species impacting the Reserve (Figure 3.6). ⑧

- Action 1: Use data to map the presence of invasive species affecting or threatening the Reserve, while identifying data gaps. ⑧
- Action 2: Utilize invasive species partnerships to support creating maps. ⑧
- Action 3: Engage interns to assist staff with mapping and ground-truthing as part of their job-training experience. ⑥

Objective 2: Initiate an invasive species monitoring program within five years. ⑧

- Action 1: Work with partners to identify existing and emerging invasive species of high priority. ⑧ ⑤
- Action 2: Identify invasive species data or data gaps, to inform the monitoring program. ⑧
- Action 3: Identify and develop opportunities to engage the public, including interns and volunteers, in the monitoring of invasives. ⑧ ④
- Action 4: Integrate appropriate SWMP/ Sentinel Site data into the invasive species monitoring program. ⑧

Goal 2: Measure and track the impacts of invasive species in coastal habitats. ⑧

Objective 1: Within one year of compiling baseline data/maps, design and begin implementing research projects to investigate the effects of priority invasive species on coastal ecosystems. ®

- Action 1: Work with partners to identify existing and emerging invasive species of high priority and develop scientific questions related to the study of invasive species impacts. ®
- Action 2: Conduct laboratory and/or field experiments to determine the impacts of high priority invasive species on ecological communities. ®

Goal 3: Reduce the impact of invasive species negatively affecting or threatening the Reserve. ©

Objective 1: By 2019, start identifying and implementing appropriate methods for minimizing the effects of at least three priority invasive species in the Reserve. ® ©

- Action 1: Prioritize invasive species management areas and establish a strategy for removal and control of key species. ® ©
- Action 2: Work with partners to identify suitable and effective methods to reduce the impacts of high priority invasive species. ® ©
- Action 3: Emphasize early detection and control measures to reduce risks and spread of emerging invasive species. ® ©

Objective 2: Conduct at least six annual events for the removal of invasive species (Figure 3.7). ©



Figure 3.7: Bree Yednock and Eric Dean (background) during a staff-wide effort to pull invasive purple loosestrife (*Lythrum salicaria*) from Barview Marsh, near the mouth of South Slough.

- Action 1: Provide training for staff, volunteers, interns, and students to identify and properly remove invasive species. ©
- Action 2: Provide staff, volunteers, interns, and student groups with opportunities to learn about invasive species through removal and effectiveness monitoring events. © ©
- Action 3: Use accessible on-line tools to support identification and training efforts. ©

Goal 4: Increase distribution of information about the status and impacts of invasive species to diverse audiences. ©

Objective 1: Incorporate invasive species concepts into at least three education pathways. ©

- Action 1: Work with partners to increase Reserve access to resources and materials available for invasive species education. ⑥
- Action 2: Provide outreach that illustrates the ecology and impacts of invasive species. ⑥
- Action 3: Develop a formal educational activity that demonstrates the ecology and impacts of invasive species. ⑥
- Action 4: Incorporate invasive species themes into workshops for decision-makers. ⑥
- Action 5: Support internships and volunteer coordination for invasive species projects and outreach. ⑥

References:

NOAA Office of Coastal Management. 2017. The National Estuarine Research Reserve System: Strategic Plan 2017-2022. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. <https://coast.noaa.gov/data/docs/nerrs/StrategicPlan.pdf>

Rumrill, S.S. 2006. The Ecology of the South Slough Estuary: Site Profile of the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve. South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve. Charleston, OR. 238 p.

Chapter 4: Program Foundations

This chapter is divided into two main sections: *Science Program Foundations* and *Education Program Foundations*. The Education Program is further divided into Education (formal and informal), Coastal Training Program, and Public Involvement.

Reserve System Program Overview

The National Estuarine Research Reserve System's mission provides that reserves are protected and managed to afford opportunities for long-term research while emphasizing education, interpretation, and outreach. The Reserve System recognizes it has a responsibility to provide training for coastal decision makers. Science and education programs at each reserve are designed to fulfill the Reserve System goals as defined in the federal regulations (15 C.F.R § 921(b)) (see sidebar).

Research

- Expand capacity to monitor changes in water quality and quantity, habitat, and biological indicators in response to land use and climate change drivers.
- Improve understanding of the effects of climate change and coastal pollution on estuarine and coastal ecology, ecosystem processes, and habitat function.
- Characterize coastal watersheds and estuary ecosystems and quantify ecosystem services to support ecosystem-based management of natural and built communities.
- Increase social science research and use of social information to foster coastal stewards that value and protect estuaries.

Education and Coastal Training

- Enhance the capacity and skills of teachers and students to understand and use Reserve System data and information for inquiry-based learning; and
- Increase estuary literacy and promote active stewardship among public audiences through the development and delivery of tools and programs addressing climate change, habitat protection, and water quality.
- Improve the capacity and skills of coastal decision makers to use and apply science-based information in decisions that affect estuaries and coastal watersheds.

Reserve System Goals include:

- Address coastal management issues identified as significant through coordinated estuarine research within the system;
- Promote federal, state, public and private use of one or more reserves within the system when such entities conduct estuarine research;
- Conduct and coordinate estuarine research within the system, gather and making available information necessary for improved understanding and management of estuarine areas.
- Enhance public awareness and understanding of estuarine areas and provide suitable opportunities for public education and interpretation;
- Conduct and coordinate estuarine research within the system, gathering and making available information necessary for improved understanding and management of estuarine areas.

Chapter 4.1: Science Program Foundations

Reserve System Research Program

The National Estuarine Research Reserve System's mission provides that reserves are protected and managed to afford opportunities for long-term research. (See Reserve System goals and objectives at beginning of chapter)

The Reserve System's research, monitoring, and stewardship programs provide the scientific basis for addressing coastal management challenges. Reserve science activities provide valuable information about estuarine resources to increase understanding and awareness of their importance to a variety of audiences including scientists, resource managers, educators, and the general public.

Currently, there is one focused effort to fund estuarine research in the Reserve System. The National Estuarine Research Reserve System Science Collaborative, a partnership between NOAA and the University of Michigan, is a program that focuses on integrating science into the management of coastal natural resources. Currently administered through the University of Michigan, the program integrates and applies the principles of collaborative research, information and technology transfer, graduate education, and adaptive management with the goal of developing and applying science-based tools to detect, prevent, and reverse the impacts of coastal pollution and habitat degradation in a time of climate change. The program is designed to enhance the Reserve System's ability to support decisions related to coastal resources through collaborative approaches that engages the people who

produce science and technology with those who need it. In so doing, the Science Collaborative seeks to make the process of linking science to coastal management decisions, practices, and policies more efficient, timely, and effective and share best practices and examples for how this can be done.

Reserve System Monitoring Program

The System-Wide Monitoring Program (SWMP) provides standardized data on national estuarine environmental trends while allowing the flexibility to assess coastal management issues of regional or local concern and is guided by the SWMP Plan. The principal mission of the monitoring program is to develop quantitative measurements of short-term variability and long-term changes in water quality, biological systems, and land use and cover characteristics of estuaries and estuarine ecosystems for the purposes of informing effective coastal zone management. The program is designed to enhance the value and vision of the reserves as a system of national references sites and focuses on three ecosystem characteristics:

1. **Abiotic Characteristics:** Abiotic measurements are supported by standard protocols, parameters, and approaches that describe the physical environment including weather, water quality, hydrological, and sediment related parameters. The monitoring program currently provides data on water temperature, specific conductivity, percent saturation of dissolved oxygen, pressure, pH, turbidity, salinity, concentration of dissolved

oxygen, and pressure corrected water depth. Meteorological data include air temperature, relative humidity, barometric pressure, wind speed, wind direction, rainfall, and photosynthetically active radiation (PAR). In addition, the program collects monthly nutrient and chlorophyll a samples and monthly diel samples at one SWMP data logger station. Data is Federal Geographical Data Committee compliant and available via the Reserve System Centralized Data Management Office.

2. **Biotic Characteristics:** As funds are available, reserves are focusing on monitoring habitats and biodiversity.
3. **Watershed and Land Use Classifications:** The Reserve System is examining the link between watershed land use and coastal habitat quality by tracking and evaluating changes in coastal habitats and watershed land use and cover. This element is guided by the Reserve System Habitat Mapping and Change Plan.

Building on these foundational elements, the Reserve System is developing a network of Sentinel Sites and the capacity to assess the impact of sea level/ lake level changes and inundation on the diverse set of coastal vegetative habitats represented in the system. Reserves are implementing a suite of activities, as described in the 2016 Reserve System Sentinel Site Guidance Document, to assess the relationship between vegetative communities (marsh, mangrove and submerged aquatic vegetation) and sea level. Reserves are adding surface elevation tables and monitoring pore water chemistry along vegetation monitoring transects and linking their SWMP stations to

a network of specialized spatial infrastructure to allow precise measurement of local sea level and lake level changes and subsequent impacts to key habitats. The Reserve System is working in partnership with NOAA's National Geodetic Survey and the Center for Operational Oceanographic Products and Services to support the development of sentinel sites.



Figure 4.1: Science staff collecting elevation data at a Reserve Sentinel Site.

South Slough Reserve Science Program

The Science Program at the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve is dedicated to scientific investigations and monitoring projects that have direct applications for improving coastal management. In order to achieve this, the Science Program is composed of three main programs:

1. Research
2. Monitoring
3. Stewardship

During the 2017-2022 planning period the Science Program will continue to:

- Advance scientific understanding of the South Slough, Coos Bay, and other Pacific Northwest estuaries and coastal watersheds through research, monitoring, and education.
- Assess and monitor the status of estuarine habitats and biotic indicators in order to track short-term variability and long-term changes in estuarine habitats and communities.
- Provide technical assistance and advisory services for the effective management of estuaries and coastal watersheds.
- Evaluate, manage and restore (if possible) the habitats and ecosystem processes within the South Slough Reserve, and collaborate with local, regional and national organizations on estuarine and coastal watershed projects.

During this planning period, the Science Program will also continue to work toward applying monitoring data to resource management problems, sustaining system-wide monitoring efforts, developing a better understanding of the connections among watersheds, estuaries, and near shore environments, and promoting the use of the Reserve for research that supports national priority issues and informed coastal management.

Geographic Scope

The geographic scope of the Science Program at the Reserve encompasses the Reserve, the South Slough and the Coos estuary, and extends throughout the Pacific Northwest and across the Reserve System.

Target Audience

The Science Program focuses on the following audiences:

- Sovereign tribal nations in the Coos Bay region and along the Oregon coast
- Decision makers, natural resource and land managers, planning agencies
- Local city (Coos Bay and North Bend) and county (Coos) governments
- Academic research communities (e.g. universities)
- K-12 students, undergraduate and graduate college students, teachers
- Conservation organizations
- Watershed councils and associations
- Economic and development entities (e.g. International Port of Coos Bay, South Coast Development Council) and commercial firms (oyster growers)
- Reserve staff, the Reserve System, and NOAA



Figure 4.2: Science program participants learning about field survey methods.

Science Community and Partners

The Reserve's science community includes broadly trained wetland, estuarine, marine, and upland biologists. Through the coordination of advisory working groups, the Reserve brings in additional expertise and resources

from partners to design effective research, monitoring, and stewardship plans that address diverse needs and priorities. The Reserve's science staff frequently works collaboratively with the following partners and stakeholders:

- **Federal Entities:** U.S. Forest Service, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Bureau of Land Management, U.S. Coast Guard, NOAA Office for Coastal Management, the Integrated Ocean Observing System (IOOS), and other NOAA offices and affiliates
- **Tribes:** Coquille Indian Tribe, Confederated Tribes of Coos, Lower Umpqua and Siuslaw Indians, the Confederated Tribes of Siletz Indians, Confederated Tribes of the Grand Ronde
- **State and Regional Agencies:** Oregon Departments of State Lands, Fish and Wildlife, Forestry, State Parks and Recreation, Environmental Quality, and Transportation, Agriculture, Land Conservation and Development, Northwest Association of Networked Ocean Observing Systems (NANOOS)
- **Local Governments:** Coos County; Curry County; Cities of Coos Bay and North Bend
- **Higher Education:** The University of Oregon and Oregon Institute of Marine Biology (OIMB), Oregon State University, Portland State University, Southwest Oregon Community College
- **Non-profit Organizations:** Friends of South Slough, Coos Watershed Association, Coquille Watershed Association; Oregon Sea Grant
- **Collaborative Groups:** Partnership for Coastal Watersheds, Gorse Action Group, Pacific Marine and Estuarine Fish Habitat Partnership

Staff, Facilities, and Infrastructure

Permanent full-time staff positions include:

- Research Coordinator/Lead Scientist
- Watershed Monitoring Coordinator
- Estuarine Monitoring Coordinator
- Stewardship Coordinator
- Monitoring Technician

Additional staff include temporary workers, interns, who are usually supported with grant funding when it is available. Volunteers are also regularly involved in the Science Program.

Science facilities and infrastructure include:

- Reserve Science Center laboratory (Figure 4.3)
- Offices in the Reserve Science Center building
- Boats, trailers, motors, vehicles (available to all staff)
- Temporary housing for visiting researchers, students, and interns
- Maintenance shop and yard for equipment and vehicle storage and numerous tools for construction and repairs
- Facilities listed and described in the Reserve Facilities Plan (Chapter 6) are also available to the Science team and its partners



Figure 4.3: Reserve Science Center laboratory located at the Oregon Institute of Marine Biology.

Many of the Reserve's local and regional research and monitoring projects are grant-funded and involve the assistance of temporary staff and interns, local and regional graduate and undergraduate students, and in-kind work by Reserve partners and volunteers. Additionally, the Reserve serves as a research site for projects that span the coast of Oregon, the Pacific Northwest, or the entire West Coast. These projects are often led by independent academic researchers (e.g. professors, graduate students), but also include governmental agencies (e.g. Environmental Protection Agency, Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife).

Information Gained Since Last Plan

Since the last management plan was approved in 2006, the Reserve has gained a great deal of information:

Climate change

- Several years of vegetation bio-monitoring data are available for the Reserve's primary Sentinel Site station and six other bio-monitoring sites in South Slough (2010; 2015; 2016; ongoing)
- With the establishment of a high-precision vertical control network, improved elevation data are available for monitoring projects throughout the Reserve (2010; ongoing)

Water quality

- In collaboration with NOAA and the Cooperative Institute for Coastal and Estuarine Environmental Technology (CICEET) at the University of New Hampshire, SWMP water quality data from four reserves (Padilla Bay, South

Slough, Elkhorn Slough, Tijuana River) were synthesized for nutrient and dissolved oxygen patterns (2007)

- Water quality analyses show a significant increasing trend in pH over the last 10 years at all SWMP stations in the South Slough, although over the last four years pH has been decreasing (2010; ongoing)
- Through support from the Science Collaborative, four secondary SWMP water-quality monitoring stations have been established in Isthmus Slough, Catching Slough, North Point (McCullough Bridge), and on the Coos River (2013) (Figure 4.4)



Figure 4.4: Science staffers Ali Helms and Adam Demarzo downloading abiotic data from a sonde at one of the Reserve SWMP stations.

- Preliminary results (2013) from the secondary SWMP stations have shown that summer values for dissolved oxygen and temperature do not meet Oregon Department of Environmental Quality's standards for healthy estuarine waters at three of the four stations (Isthmus Slough, Catching Slough, and Coos River)
- Real-time water quality equipment and data access tools (CDMO Web Services and NANOOS Visualization System)

have enhanced the Education Program and increased the use of SWMP data by local stakeholders including teachers, researchers, and West Coast oyster growers (NVS launched 2009; ongoing)

Ecology

- Research completed by a Reserve System graduate research fellow increased knowledge on the ecology and life history of *Nereocystis luetkeana* (bull kelp) in the South Slough estuary (2006)
- The population ecology of the diatom *Pseudo nitzschia* within the South Slough estuary was studied by a Reserve System graduate research fellow (2007)
- Research by a Reserve System graduate research fellow provided new information on species interaction dynamics between seagrasses and macroalgae and the role of nutrient sources on interaction outcomes in the South Slough estuary (2011)
- Research by a Reserve System graduate research fellow evaluated community structure, plant interactions, seedling performance, and seed bank composition of six salt marshes along the South Slough estuarine gradient (2011)
- Research by University of Oregon students and NOAA graduate research fellows has improved the Reserve's understanding of native oyster reproduction, larval movement, recruitment, and feeding capacity in the Coos estuary (2013)
 - o Reserve staff and interns determined native oyster recruitment is low in South Slough compared to other locations in the Coos estuary (2014; ongoing)

- Some Port Orford cedar trees sampled in the Reserve have shown increased genetic resistance to Port Orford cedar root rot (*Phytophthora lateralis*), compared to trees sampled from other parts of their native range (2013-2015; ongoing)
- The value of large woody debris for salmonids, as both providing complex structural habitat and promoting invertebrate prey abundance, was researched and compared to adjacent sites with no woody debris (2008)
- With the assistance of Reserve staff and others, the Oregon Department of Land Conservation and Development drafted estuarine habitat classification maps for the Coos estuary using the Coastal Marine and Ecological Classification Standard (CMECS) (2014; ongoing)
- The Reserve has a better understanding of circulation in the Coos estuary from the hydrodynamic model created by partners at the University of Oregon through the Partnership for Coastal Watersheds (2015; ongoing)

Habitat Restoration

- The Reserve's Upper Watershed Restoration Action Plan (2009) provided new information about the uplands in the Reserve and a foundation for future restoration projects
- In collaboration with CICEET and Green Point Consulting, development of a tidal wetland reference condition database and a temperature sensor method for detecting tidal inundation in least-disturbed tidal wetlands provided new tools for restoration projects (2011)

- In collaboration with the NOAA Restoration Center and five Reserves (South Slough, Wells, North Carolina, Chesapeake Bay Virginia, and Narragansett Bay), research on tidal wetland plant, soil, and hydrologic response to restoration using performance benchmarks from a local reference system identified that Reserve System can provide long term reference sites for local tidal wetland restoration projects (2012)
- Port Orford cedars planted in restoration sites show low mortality rates in their first two years of monitoring (2013-2015; ongoing)

Invasive species

- Three Reserve System graduate research projects provided new information about invasive species in the Reserve: one investigated the changes to nutrient and carbon cycling, soil properties and ecosystem processes by *Phalaris arundinacea* (reed canary grass) and *Zostera japonica* (Japanese eelgrass); a second explored the invasion of the burrowing isopod *Sphaeroma quoianum* in the Coos estuary, and a third tracked the settlement and growth of the marine bryozoan *Schizoporella japonica* and epifaunal community development in the South Slough estuary (2009, 2010, 2012)
- Data are available on the distribution and density of two non-native snails (*Assiminea parasitologica* and *Myosotella myosotis*) in the Coos estuary (2010)
- Two introduced species found in the South Slough estuary—the colonial sea squirt *Didemnum vexillum*, a relatively recent arrival, and nutria (*Myocastor coypus*),

a long-established exotic mammal—have taken on new significance as nuisance species within the Reserve (2010, 2012)

End user outreach

- The *State of the South Slough and Coastal Frontal Watersheds* project summarized newly collected and existing data that describes environmental and socio-economic conditions in the South Slough and coastal frontal watersheds (2012)
- Through efforts of the Partnership for Coastal Watersheds, the *Community, Lands & Waterways Data Source* (Data Source) was created to provide a comprehensive compilation of existing status and trends that characterize environmental and socio-economic conditions in the Coos estuary and surrounding communities, and describes anticipated effects of climate change in the Coos estuary and surrounding area (2015; ongoing)
- The Data Source also identified large data gaps for the Coos estuary, including (2015; ongoing):
 - o Eelgrass distribution and cover
 - o Bathymetry
 - o Native clams, native crabs, lamprey, and sturgeon populations
 - o Sediment composition and contamination
 - o Water quality (nutrients and pollutants)
- Results from a qualitative resource condition evaluation and scoring process (2008 Resource Condition Scorecard), addressing environmental conditions and trends of water, habitat, and living resources in the Reserve, provided information for research, monitoring, and education projects and local stakeholders (2008).

Science Program Delivery

System-wide Programs, National Programs, and National Priorities

The Science Program implements the System-Wide Monitoring Program (SWMP) and the Reserve System's Climate Change Initiative in a number of ways. Two full-time staff carry out abiotic SWMP monitoring in the Reserve (Figure 4.5). They are responsible for maintaining and collecting data from core water quality stations, nutrient stations, and weather stations, implementing quality assurance/control procedures, analyzing the data, and translating and interpreting data for education programs. The Reserve maintains one real-time SWMP weather station, which was located on the OIMB campus from 2001-2014. Due to the installation of a wind turbine by OIMB, the weather station has been relocated to the south end of the Reserve. Core SWMP water and weather monitoring components are supported by funds from NOAA and NANOOS. NANOOS funding is used to maintain telemetry equipment at five of the Reserve's water quality stations, which send data to online data portals developed by NANOOS.

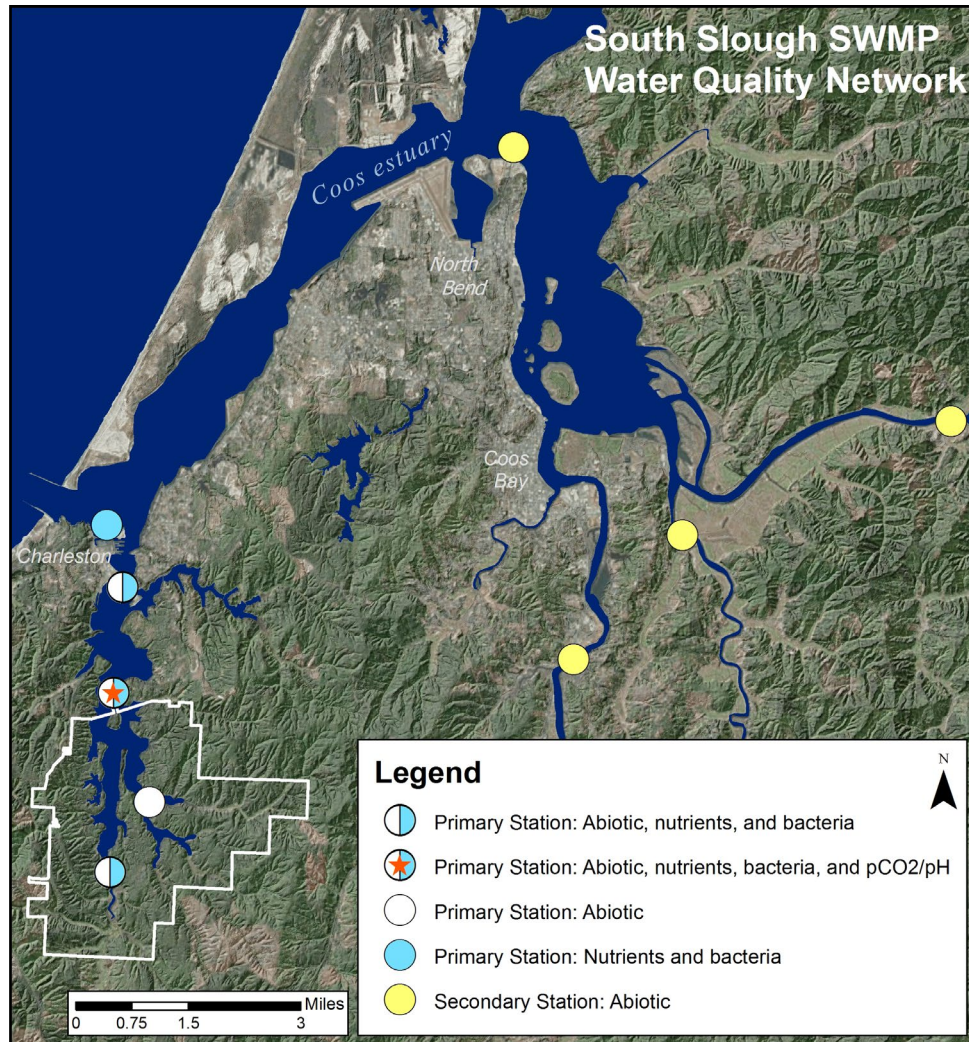


Figure 4.5: The extent of South Slough Reserve's SWMP program. Reserve boundaries outlined in white.

The Reserve participates in the Reserve System's Sentinel Sites program (Figure 4.6). In 2016, science staff created the South Slough Sentinel Site Plan and a Vertical Control Plan that outlines the Reserve's strategy for implementing Sentinel Site Application Module No. 1. Over the next five years, science staff will complete the installation of the necessary infrastructure for making Hidden Creek Marsh an official Sentinel Site station.

In accordance with the habitat mapping and change component of SWMP, science staff are working towards creating maps for Reserve-managed lands that show watershed and land use classification and the spatial distribution of habitats. Reserve habitats had previously been delineated using the Reserve System's habitat and land cover classification system. Over the term of this plan, science staff will work to validate habitat classifications and convert them to the CMECS. The Reserve is also partnering with Oregon's Department of Land Conservation and Development to apply the CMECS to the entire Coos estuary. The completion of habitat maps for the Reserve is a strategic objective for this planning period.

Science Program Goals for 2017-2022

The Reserve worked with partners and stakeholders to identify important research and monitoring projects to implement during the next five years. These projects are grouped into three priority themes: *climate change*, *habitat protection*, and *invasive species*. The specific goals of the Science Program are outlined below, along with examples of how the program will work to achieve the goals.

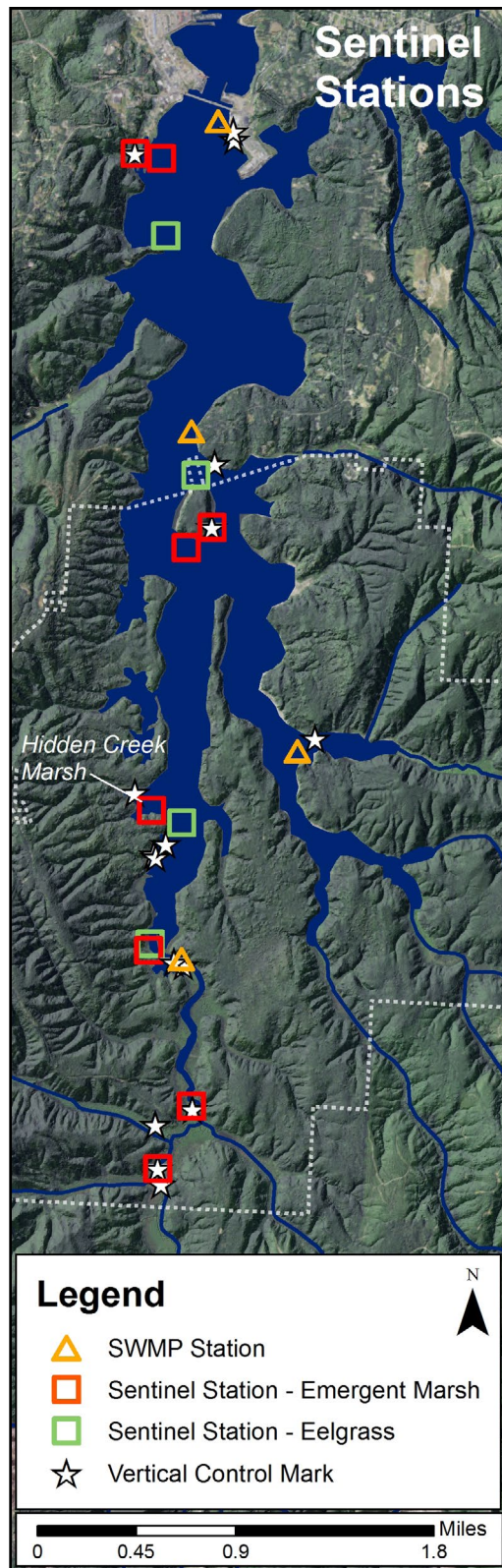


Figure 4.6: Locations of South Slough Reserve's Sentinel Site stations and vertical control marks. Hidden Creek Marsh is the primary sentinel station. Reserve boundary outlined in dashed white.

Climate Change Goal 1: Increase Reserve understanding of the local effects of sea level rise.

Much of this goal centers on formally establishing the Reserve's Sentinel Site station at Hidden Creek and continued monitoring at the Reserve's secondary bio-monitoring sites. Monitoring work (including emergent marsh, eelgrass, and shrub-scrub bio-monitoring, surface elevation change, estuary water level change, ground water levels, and mapping) is coordinated by the Estuarine and Watershed Monitoring Coordinators and carried out by a combination of staff, interns, volunteers, and student scholars. Monitoring occurs at the Reserve's primary sentinel site station (Hidden Creek Marsh) and seven secondary sites every three years, depending on available funding for materials and supplies (Figure 4.6).

Climate Change Goal 2: Increase Reserve understanding of ocean acidification in the Pacific Northwest.

The Reserve will continue to refine protocols for studying pH dynamics in estuaries. Data from the Reserve's high resolution pH and pCO₂ (partial pressure of carbon dioxide) sensors in South Slough will be analyzed and used to help interpret data collected at the Reserve's SWMP water quality stations. Science staff will continue to be involved in efforts by the West Coast Ocean Acidification and Hypoxia Panel to develop of a West Coast acidification monitoring network.

Climate Change Goal 3: Increase Reserve understanding of the relationships between climate change and ecosystem functions in Pacific Northwest marine and estuarine environments.

Reserve science staff will continue involvement with the Pacific Northwest Coastal Blue Carbon Working Group through a research project funded by the Reserve System Science Collaborative to quantify carbon stocks in estuarine wetlands across the Pacific Northwest. Wetlands within the Coos estuary and South Slough Reserve will be included as study sites for the project and Reserve science staff will provide logistical support and coordination of local fieldwork.

Climate Change Goal 4: Increase communications about actual and potential climate impacts to diverse audiences.

The Reserve's science staff will work closely with the Education and Coastal Training Program sectors to provide trainings on climate science and develop science-based education products (e.g. exhibits, publications) to illustrate local and regional impacts of climate change.

Habitat Protection Goal 1: Assess and monitor habitats in the Coos estuary in order to characterize conditions and changes in habitat use and availability.

The Reserve is investigating the use of estuarine habitats and tributaries by fish and invertebrates. Through 2017 science staff will continue to implement a multi-year project funded by a grant from the Pacific Marine and Estuarine Fish Habitat Partnership (PMEP) that involves monthly sampling at six locations in the



Figure 4.7: Volunteers and staff pulling in a beach seine at Barview.

South Slough and seasonal sampling at three sites in the upper Coos estuary to characterize spatial and temporal patterns of fish and invertebrate assemblages (Figure 4.7).

Habitat Protection Goal 2: Continue to build the ridgetop-to-estuary habitat restoration program.

The restoration program at the Reserve is coordinated by the Stewardship Coordinator and focuses on ridgetop to estuary watershed function. The Reserve has a long track record of successful tidal marsh restoration projects and is now extending work into riparian and upland habitats. With the information gained from the Reserve's 2009 Upper Watershed Restoration Action Plan, the Wasson Creek drainage was identified as the highest priority for habitat improvement and protection. The Wasson technical advisory group is working towards having a ridgetop to estuary restoration plan completed by end of 2017. The Science Program will also continue to work with partners, such as Oregon State University extension, to identify and develop community driven habitat protection opportunities that will be helpful for natural resource management and regional land owner education.

Invasive Species Goal 1: Characterize and monitor the extent of invasive species affecting the Reserve.

The Reserve is mapping the presence and extent of high priority invasive species affecting the reserve. Science staff are partnering with the Gorse Action Group to map the presence of gorse (*Ulex europaeus*) in the Coos and adjacent coastal watersheds. The distribution of reed canary grass (*Phalaris arundinacea*) and Himalayan blackberry (*Rubus armeniacus*) have been mapped at the Wasson restoration site to provide baseline information on their spatial coverage. These maps will be modified following the implementation of restoration work and with data collected during post-project monitoring. A survey of European green crabs (*Carcinus maenas*) in 2016 led to the development of a map showing the spatial distribution of green crabs throughout the Coos estuary, including South Slough (Figure 4.8). Maps will be updated during this planning period as more data are collected through Science Program monitoring projects.



Figure 4.8: Survey map from 2016 green crab trapping effort.

Invasive Species Goal 2: Measure and track the impacts of invasive species in coastal habitats.

Science staff will work with partners to develop research projects to investigate the impacts of invasive species on native communities. Projects focused on European green crabs, Japanese eelgrass (*Zostera japonica*), and reed canary grass are of particular interest to the Reserve's Science Program.

Invasive Species Goal 3: Reduce the impact of invasive species negatively affecting or threatening the Reserve.

Invasive species control at the Reserve focuses on upland species, which pairs well with outreach and education opportunities. The Reserve's Stewardship Coordinator continues to organize events that bring community groups and students to the Reserve, where they learn about the impacts and concerns related to invasive species, receive training on control techniques for invasive plants, and assist with removing invasives from key areas in and around the Reserve.

Intended Outcomes

By focusing on the above goals over the next several years, the Science Program will gain an improved understanding of its three priority issues as described below:

Climate change: The Science Program will better understand the impacts of climate change on the sustainability of estuarine habitats in the Coos estuary, particularly impacts from sea level rise. In coordination with the Pacific Northwest Blue Carbon Working Group, the Reserve will have a better understanding of car-

bon stocks and sequestration rates in estuarine habitats in the Reserve and how they compare to similar habitats in other estuaries of the Pacific Northwest. The Reserve will also have an improved understanding of estuarine acidification and water column carbon dynamics and have baseline time series datasets of estuarine pCO₂ and pH to contribute to those interested in estuarine/ocean acidification.

Habitat protection: The Science Program will have updated information on fish assemblages and habitat use in South Slough and Coos Bay. Specifically, the Reserve will better understand fish usage at restoration sites over time and distributions of native fish in the South Slough watershed (e.g. lamprey and Coho salmon). The Reserve will also develop and implement ridgetop to estuary focused restoration projects in high priority areas, such as Winchester Creek, the Wasson drainage, and for endangered species. Furthermore, the Science Program will gain a better understanding of the estuary and its dynamics through the hydrodynamic modeling system currently in development.

Invasive species: Through monitoring and research efforts, the Reserve will have a better understanding of the distribution and abundance of high priority invasive species in the Coos estuary, as well as improved mapping, modeling, and control of key invasive species affecting the Reserve. Specific research will be done on Port Orford cedar root rot (*Phytophthora lateralis*), continuing to contribute to regional monitoring efforts. Control efforts will focus primarily on upland and marsh species, although the Reserve will take advantage of research opportunities to experiment with controlling all invaders.

Program Integration

The Science Program provides technical support to the Reserve's Education Program in several ways. Information gained through research, monitoring, and experimental habitat restoration work is regularly integrated into education programs. Science staff provides field training to education staff, giving them detailed information on current monitoring and research projects. In addition, science staff often present to classes and teachers, mentor interns, advise students, and lead field trips.

The Science Program also, in part, guides the work of the Coastal Training Program. The results of research and monitoring projects are a major source of information for decision-maker participants in coastal training events. The science team provides presentations and demonstrations for coastal training programs.

The science team works closely with the Public Involvement Coordinator to develop and review intern and volunteer position descriptions, conduct interviews, and provide mentoring and evaluation for interns and volunteers.

The science team is also involved in helping guide the Friends of South Slough (FOSS) planning and project efforts. In particular, science staff attend monthly board meetings, annual budget planning meetings, and offer guidance and assessment of current projects to ensure that they align with the Science Program.

Staff regularly seeks opportunities to integrate their activities to be mutually reinforcing (e.g. a proposal to fund education programs and teacher workshops based on research data). Education and coastal training staff, as well as other employees, help shape the Science Program's direction by keeping staff informed of education and training needs, and of new developments in the Reserve or in local community management.

Results and Evaluations

At the beginning of each year, the Science Program implements an annual review and projection of projects, to assess their alignment to priorities, determine needs, and evaluate progress. The Reserve also submits annual updates on performance metrics to both the Department of State Lands and to NOAA. Reserve staff report progress and news three times a year to the Reserve Management Commission and grant-based work is contingent on reports documenting successful outcomes of project proposals.

Additionally, the Science Program, like all Reserve programs, is reviewed periodically to assess accomplishments, needs, and recommendations for program enhancements (Section 312 reviews). Each new research opportunity is evaluated by the Reserve staff to determine whether it fits the priorities of the Reserve, the Reserve System, and NOAA, as well as the Reserve's core principles. Finally, Reserve staff receives individual annual performance reviews and evaluations by DSL management.

Science Program Needs

- Fill data gaps identified by the Communities, Lands & Waterways Data Source
- Facilitate the update of the Coos Bay Estuary Management Plan including refining Oregon State's estuary habitat classification maps
- Facilitate continued development of the Coos estuary hydrodynamic model to help coastal decision makers develop adaptive management responses to changes in sediment transport dynamics and sea level rise in the Coos estuary
- Facilitate the development of a mobile-friendly, real-time depth gauge at the McCullough Bridge SWMP station
- Expand partnership and funding opportunities to investigate coastal blue carbon and other ecological services provided by estuaries
- Continue to investigate the sustainability of tidal wetlands in the Coos estuary and South Slough in the face of sea level rise
- Continue water quality monitoring of South Slough and the Coos estuary
- Pre- and post-restoration monitoring of vegetation communities and fish and wildlife populations
- Mapping and monitoring of invasive species
- Develop methods for early detection of invasive species
- Continued development of the ridgetop to estuary restoration program and associated projects.

Science Program Needs and Opportunities

Needs

The needs in the left sidebar were identified by stakeholders, staff, and Reserve management. Each of these needs informed the Reserve Strategic Plan (Chapter 3) and are guiding current and/or planned research.

Capacity, Limitations, and Opportunities

Capacity for many science projects will be determined largely by the success of funding proposals. Grants will continue to be instrumental for funding long term, multi-dimensional projects, especially those that require expertise or equipment not currently available to Reserve staff (e.g. hydrodynamic model development, aerial imagery captures, etc.). Involvement of interns and student researchers will also continue to provide additional temporary capacity for science, monitoring, and stewardship projects.

Barriers to developing capacity include a lack of funding for new projects (materials, equipment, and staff), and limited staff availability to implement work related to existing, intermittently funded (e.g. Sentinel Site stations) and unfunded system-wide projects (e.g. habitat mapping).

To some extent those limitations can be offset through resources provided by partners, collaborative relationships with others, and working with education and training staff to identify cross-disciplinary funding opportunities that involve graduate and undergraduate students in both science and education.

Chapter 4.2: Education Program Foundations

The Education Program at the Reserve comprises formal and informal education, the Coastal Training Program and the Public Involvement Program. The following sections outline program context at the national level, followed by specific program delivery, goals, and needs for South Slough's: *Education Program* (which focuses on K-12, teacher, and community education), *Coastal Training Program*, and *Public Involvement Program*.

Education Program - National Level

The National Estuarine Research Reserve System's mission includes an emphasis on education, interpretation, and outreach (See Reserve System goals and objectives in the Chapter 4 introduction, page 4-1).

The Reserve System provides a vehicle to increase understanding and awareness of estuarine systems and improve decision-making among key audiences to promote stewardship of the nation's coastal resources. Education and interpretation incorporate science-based content into a range of programs and methodologies that are systematically tailored to key audiences around priority coastal resource issues.

Reserves conduct formal and informal education activities, as well as outreach activities that target culturally diverse audiences of educators and students, environmental professionals, resource users and the general public. Education and public programs, interpretive exhibits and community outreach programs integrate elements of Reserve System

science, research and monitoring activities and ensure a systematic, multi-faceted, and locally focused approach to fostering stewardship.

The Reserve System is committed to preparing tomorrow's future leaders with the knowledge and understanding of our nation's oceans and coasts to be responsible stewards. To fulfill this commitment, the Reserve System has created the K-12 Estuarine Education Program (KEEP) to increase the estuary literacy of students, teachers and the general public. The KEEP Program helps students and teachers learn about essential coastal and estuarine concepts, develop data literacy skills and strengthen their critical thinking, team building, and problem-solving skills. K-12 and professional development programs for teachers include the use of established coastal and estuarine science curricula aligned with state and national science education standards and frequently involves both on-site and in-school follow-up activity.

Conservation action education is another priority for the Reserve System. Conservation action education programs foster behavioral change to promote resource conservation. These programs work with audiences whose choices directly impact the integrity of our estuaries and their associated watersheds.

Coastal Training Program - National Level

The Coastal Training Program (CTP) emerged as a Reserve System education initiative in 2001, evolving from the Coastal Decision-Maker Workshops that became part of the basic operations for all reserves in 1998. The CTP is

designed to provide scientific information and skill-building opportunities to coastal decision-makers, facilitate networking and collaborations at local and bio-regional levels, and increase understanding of the consequences of human activities within the coastal landscape.

The CTP uses a variety of formats including seminars, hands-on skills training, participatory workshops, and technology demonstrations. Partnerships are essential to the CTP and programming is coordinated with the efforts of state coastal management and Sea Grant programs, along with local and regional agencies and organizations.

The Coastal Training Program provides up-to-date scientific information and skill-building opportunities to coastal decision makers responsible for making decisions affecting coastal resources. Through this program, reserves ensure that coastal decision makers have the knowledge and tools they need to address local critical resource management issues.

Coastal decision makers are defined as individuals whose duties include making decisions that affect the coast and its resources. The target decision-maker groups vary according to reserve priorities, but generally include groups such as local elected or appointed officials, managers of both public and private lands, natural resource managers, coastal and community planners, and coastal business owners and operators. They may also include groups such as farmers, watershed councils, professional associations, recreation enthusiasts, researchers, and more.

Reserves are uniquely positioned to deliver

pertinent information to local and regional decision makers given their place-based nature. Coastal Training Program coordinators know the local people, places, and science are able to skillfully convene training participants and experts to address coastal management issues. Coastal training programs are built upon solid and strategic program documents, including an analysis of the training, market and assessment of audience needs. Coordinators then work with the results to identify how their program can best address local and Reserve System priority issues.

Partnerships are integral to the success of the program. Reserves work closely with several other NOAA programs, as well as a host of local partners in determining key coastal resource issues, target audiences, and expertise to deliver relevant and accessible programs.



Figure 4.9: Mushroom workshop, a popular program offered to the public where participants hike to collect mushrooms then bring back to the Reserve Interpretive Center to learn about what they found.

South Slough Reserve Education Program

The Education Program at the Reserve began in the late 1970's with an emphasis on providing structured on-site activities for students and teachers, interpretive displays and information about general estuarine themes, and opportunities for the public to learn about and experience estuaries. The Education Program is built on the belief that when people are aware of the functions and values of estuaries and coastal watersheds, they are motivated to support the management and protection of these habitats.

During the past several decades, the Reserve has greatly expanded its interpretive facilities, trails, technological capacity, partnerships, and staff, which have enabled the Reserve to reach new audiences with a larger scope of educational offerings.

The Education Program strives to provide activities that appeal to a range of interests, ages, and backgrounds. Audiences can be categorized as formal, including professional participants and students, and informal, including the public. Formal audiences also include participants from traditional and non-traditional education settings, from pre-school to lifetime learning groups. Formal professional audiences may include members of community organizations, service clubs, and educators, along with coastal decision-makers.

The informal audience includes people who visit the Visitors' Center and trails at the Reserve and participate in interpretive programs, as well as those who attend off-site exhibits and events in which the Reserve participates.

The Reserve provides school-based education programs and implements national education initiatives guided by the Reserve System. The Reserve also offers a variety of public programs, including guided hikes and paddling trips, various lectures and seminars, volunteer training, children's activities, and hands-on learning experiences (Figure 4.9).

Additionally, the Education Program coordinates the development of interpretive materials and exhibits for the Reserve.

Geographic Scope

The Education Program draws participation from schools across Oregon and visitors from the West Coast, although tourists from throughout the United States and world visit the Reserve as well. The primary audience for the Reserve's educational efforts is within a six county area of southwestern Oregon: Coos, Curry, Douglas, Lane, Jackson, and Josephine counties.

The Reserve hosts teachers, students, and other program participants, predominately from the Pacific Northwest, but at times from across the nation. For example, the Reserve annually hosts students from the Williams-Mystic Maritime Studies Program in Connecticut. Distance learning methodologies and partnerships have significantly extended the reach of the Reserve's education program, providing increased visibility and expanded opportunities for new audiences.

Information Gained Since Last Plan

Completion of the Education Program Market Analysis and Needs Assessment (Gaskill and Kulluson, 2012) provides the latest available guidance for program development and expansion.

The market analysis surveyed providers of coastal education from all across Oregon through an on-line survey and via two regional focus groups. Questions focused on the background of the response organization, programs offered, topics covered, professional development, and program marketing. Additional responses were gathered at professional environmental education meetings in southern Oregon and at South Slough.

The needs assessment targeted teachers and administrators in the six counties of Oregon outlined in the Geographic Scope description. Teachers in three grade bands, upper elementary (grades 3-5), middle school (grades 6-8), and high school (grades 9-12) were asked to respond to an on-line survey. Questions focused on grades taught, teaching experience, profile of the student population, topics and activities taught related to coastal education, delivery methods, use of field experiences, and recognition of South Slough. 190 of 1,300 teachers responded for a response rate of 15%.

Major findings included:

- Pre-service and in-service teacher professional development was identified as an opportunity for future growth
- Teacher professional development should emphasize skill building in partnership formation for collaboration with other providers and for seeking program funding
- Identified focal areas of educator interest included: coastal hazards, marine and estuarine biology and ecology, data analysis, climate change and sea level rise, best management practices, and interdisciplinary research
- Climate change impacts and coastal ecology were identified as strong areas of interest
- Teachers identified the following areas where support is needed: education materials and activities, age appropriate background materials, professional development, sampling equipment, and funds to support these activities
- A sustained long-term professional development relationship was identified as the key to successful training
- Field experiences with a multi-day component and distance learning opportunities were identified as the best methods to meet needs

Responses from school groups, formal and informal program participants have also contributed to the information gained since the last plan. Program participant feedback has included evaluation surveys at the conclusion of interpretive programs, feedback from summer campers and their parents, and collection of data about program attendance. Feedback has influenced the types of programs offered as well as the design and delivery of summer camps.

The Oregon Coast Education Program (OCEP), a teacher professional development program, has also provided information resultant of teacher workshops and professional networking. Every teacher workshop has included pre- and post-surveys. The information gained from these has been compiled into recommendations

to improve the workshops and guide future directions for OCEP. When planning future workshops, lessons learned about format, length, delivery method, and topics covered have been used to evolve agendas.

Needs identified by teachers in surveys have informed identification of best practices in field experience, connections to Next Generation Science Standards (NGSS), and access to teaching resources as goals for the program. Sharing the OCEP model with OCEP partners and through professional meetings have led to a better understanding of how to deliver effective professional development to teachers.

Since the last management plan, feedback from partners has also included the idea that coastal education needs to adopt a holistic view that unifies the understanding of relationships between watersheds, estuaries, the ocean, and Earth's climate. Consequently, the Reserve acknowledges the importance of reaching beyond coastal communities to better understand and reach the major population centers of Oregon with services and products supported by scientific research and best practices.

Target Audience

The Education Program targets and serves a variety of audiences. The type of audience determines the nature of the content, methods, and location of instruction.

The primary emphasis for formal education at the Reserve is the Kindergarten-to-12th grade Estuary Education Program, known as KEEP. The KEEP audience includes students from kindergarten through grade 12, and



Figure 4.10: Summer campers proudly displaying their work.

comprises roughly 70 percent of the Reserve's 6,000 annual education program participants. Geographic proximity is a defining characteristic limiting participation in this program and thus a large portion of students come from Coos County, with the remaining coming mostly from the other five counties of southwestern Oregon.

Audiences for professional development include teachers, both formal (e.g. K-12 professional and pre-service teachers) and informal educators (e.g. volunteer instructors, interpretive aides), participating in various teacher-training and volunteer skill-building activities. The target audience for professional development programming mainly includes educators from the Pacific Northwest.

Since 2009, collaborative planning with a network of partner institutions forming OCEP has provided professional development and evaluated the needs of teachers in Oregon. Through this process teachers from the Oregon Coast, the Willamette Valley, the Portland Metro area, and Central Oregon have been identified as target participants. Oregon State University Extension Service and the Oregon Natural Resources Education Program also provide access to teacher professional

development opportunities. Partnerships with new learning centers, or hubs, focused on science, technology, engineering, and math education (STEM) have further advanced outreach to teachers in the state.

With support from the Friends of South Slough, the Education Program runs a series of summer camps from June through July for elementary through high school aged students (Figure 4.10). The majority of campers are local residents or family of local residents.

Informal education and public interpretation is focused mostly on visitors and local residents; these consumers are primarily self-selecting. The geographic range of this audience is seasonal. With the end of the school year and arrival of tourists, the audiences increase to include all visitors of the southern Oregon coast. However, with the decline of tourism in fall, informal education refocuses on local populations.

Education Program Themes

Long-time, cross-audience educational themes at the Reserve include:

- Estuarine ecology encompasses a complex system of relationships between living and non-living elements connecting through the watershed, from ridge-top to estuary.
- Habitat protection and restoration within the watershed, estuary, and ocean help to support a sustainable estuarine ecosystem.
- Study of land and water use, habitat change, and water quality support improved understanding of the estuarine ecosystem and the activities necessary to protect these functions.
- Invasive species pose significant threats

to the stability and integrity of coastal watersheds and controlling and monitoring invasive species is a part of ecosystem protection.

Emerging educational themes at the Reserve include:

- Impacts of global climate change, such as sea level rise and the spread of invasive species, may pose significant threats to the stability and integrity of coastal lands and waters.
- Through education and training, residents of coastal communities will be better able to increase resiliency of estuaries and shore lands to these and other climate-related effects.

Partnerships

For implementation of KEEP, the Reserve works locally with schools and districts in Coos County, and to a lesser degree, in Curry, Douglas, Lane, Jackson and Josephine counties. Primary partner institutions include North Bend, Coos Bay, and Bandon schools, the Oregon State University Extension, and the University of Oregon's OIMB.

The Education Program also works with the Oregon Environmental Literacy Program to advance an environmental literacy plan adopted by the state in 2010. The education program coordinator is a member of the regional leadership team and program council.

Partnerships that facilitate teacher training and professional development at the Reserve include: Portland State University, the Hatfield Marine Science Center, and the Oregon Coast Aquarium. The Oregon Coast STEM Hub is a

regional resource for teachers, students and informal educators. The Reserve is a partner and holds a seat on the leadership council.

Collaboration with the Oregon Natural Resources Education Program at Oregon State University, and the Oregon Coast Education Program network, also provides opportunities for professional development. This network provides access to facilities, personnel, and training resources. Education staff actively participates in, and are leaders of, the Northwest Aquatic and Marine Educators (NAME), a regional guild of the National Marine Education Association that includes institutions and educators from Alaska, British Columbia, Washington, and Oregon.

Participation and leadership in engagement with these networks, and other broader impact activities, increase the stature, visibility, and effectiveness of the education program throughout the Pacific Northwest.



Figure 4.11: Education program about to head out on the water in the Reserve's flagship canoe, "Chmoosh."

Staff, Facilities, and Infrastructure

The Reserve's ability to implement education programs depends on maintaining sufficient staff, funding, materials, facilities, and

operational support to meet the needs of the target audiences. The Education Program is currently operating at capacity. However, the Education Program continues to actively seek opportunities through recruitment of volunteers, efficient operation of fund-based programming, and solicitation of additional grant funding to enhance delivery.

Permanent full-time education staff positions include:

- Education Coordinator
- Education Program Specialist
- Coastal Training Program Coordinator
- Public Involvement Coordinator

Addition staffing resources:

- Temporary workers, interns, and volunteers are regularly involved in the Education Program. These positions are usually supported with grant funding and fluctuate over time. In addition, funds from the FOSS support a seasonal part-time gift shop assistant position and a seasonal full-time camp leader position to help coordinate the Reserve's summer camps.

Education facilities and infrastructure include:

- The Visitors' Center is a 6,755 square foot room that welcomes visitors with interactive exhibits designed to encourage further exploration of the estuary
- The Visitors' Center also serves as a base for workshops, field trips, lectures, classroom, and laboratory activities
 - o The auditorium seats 70 participants in lecture format and can accommodate about 30 participants in a classroom set-up. The auditorium is also equipped for video conferencing for large groups.

- o The classroom offers wet lab space and can accommodate 25 students.
- The Visitors' Center also houses the entire education staff and part of the administrative staff
- Guided kayak trips of South Slough are provided for groups that have their own vessels
- An eight-passenger canoe is available to lead small groups on the water (Figure 4.11)
- For some programs, Education may use the Reserve's motorized water craft
- The Reserve trail system is integral to the implementation of education programming (Figure 4.12)



Figure 4.12: Class discovering coastal forest habitats on one of the Reserve trails.

- Facilities listed and described in the Reserve Facilities Plan (Chapter 6) are also available to the education team and its partners.

The Education Program partners with institutions locally and regionally to expand staff and facility capacity. Primary partners include Southwestern Oregon Community College, Oregon State University Extension, the Oregon Institute of Marine Biology (OIMB), Oregon Coast STEM Hub and other natural resources agencies.

Education Program Delivery

System-wide Programs, National Programs, and National Priorities

The education program uses information products developed by the Reserve System, such as SWMP data, to develop teaching materials for students. Through OCEP and professional development, the Reserve connects teachers with Estuaries 101 activities to use as preparation and reflection for field experiences at the Reserve. In support of national products, elements of the local curricula are designed to work with products available through NOAA (e.g. the www.estuaries.noaa.gov website, the Estuary Live video library collection, the SWMP data graphing tool, and other resources). All three OCEP coastal education modules contain activities which connect to national products.

Workshops for teachers and students, such as the Bringing Wetlands to Market curriculum on climate change, provide a good opportunity to implement national programs like the Teachers on the Estuary (TOTE) component of the KEEP. This curriculum also exemplifies the link to the Climate Change Initiative and provides a forum for discussing and sharing information about the resiliency of coastal communities to the effects of climate change.

During the period covered by this plan, greater emphasis will be given to the use of national products when relevant. Historically, support for TOTE programs has been funded through NOAA Bay-Watershed Education and Training Program (B-WET) grants and delivered by the OCEP leadership team. With increased support

for TOTE from the Reserve System, TOTE workshops will be delivered by the Reserve and focus on connecting teachers with national products such as the Sentinel Site program (Figure 4.13).



Figure 4.13: Students monitoring a salt marsh plot for vegetation. Salt marsh biomonitoring is a key component of the Sentinel Site Program.

Activities and Methodologies

Education activities include formal and informal education, summer camps, public involvement and volunteer coordination, public events, and training for educators, coastal managers, and decision makers. Programs focus on connecting participants with estuary habitats and Reserve research. The design of these activities is based on information gained from the MA/NA and response to program offerings.

Over the course of this management plan, the Reserve will continue to incorporate field based activities for KEEP students and teachers that address priority areas. The majority of school programs occur in the field with students exploring the habitats of the estuary, and depending on grade level, students participate in data collection or other science focused activities. The content and delivery method is varied

depending on grade level and age appropriateness.

Teachers have the responsibility to incorporate these field experiences into their classroom teaching. Educational staff capacity makes it difficult to connect with students in the classroom which is why the Reserve has increased its focus on teacher professional development to help connect the classroom to field experiences.

In the next several years, the Reserve will expand its professional development program for teachers. Methods for this effort will include teacher professional development workshops hosted at the Reserve and at partner sites, support of educators engaging students in best practices related to field and classroom-based study, and provision of relevant curriculum and scientific data, research, scientists, and technology. TOTE workshops will connect teachers with data products that can be used in conjunction with data collection activities happening in the Reserve. The OCEP model of teacher professional development is also evolving to look beyond the individual teacher by incorporating best practices and implementation by teachers across the school. Through TOTE workshops, OCEP and the Reserve's partnership with the Oregon Coast STEM Hub, long-term professional development relationships will continue to be built.

Informal programs reach a wide audience from toddlers to retired citizens. Informal programs are delivered in a variety of formats from lecture, to hands-on workshop to exploration of local habitats.

Education Program Goals for 2017-2022

Over-arching educational goals at the Reserve include:

- Use innovative programming and delivery to increase understanding of estuarine and coastal watershed ecosystems.
- Expand and maintain awareness about coastal environments and the Reserve to enhance understanding and interest in the benefits offered by coastal watersheds.
- Continually evolve the educational program themes and goals to use current scientific information.
- Provide a variety of high-quality educational experiences to facilitate understanding of long-time and emerging themes.
- Evaluate education program effectiveness in reaching key audiences and addressing priority issues.

In order to address the over-arching goals for the Reserve's Education Program, and to identify priorities for the 2017-2022 planning period, the Reserve worked with partners and stakeholders to identify locally and regionally relevant priorities. Program delivery activities are grouped into three priority themes in the Reserve's Strategic Plan (see Chapter 3): *climate change, habitat protection, and invasive species.*

The specific goals of the Education Program are outlined below, along with details on how the goals will be addressed.

Climate Change Goal 4: Increase communications about actual and potential climate change impacts to diverse audiences.

The TOTE program, as identified in the Reserve Sentinel Site Plan, will work with Science

Program staff to deliver a TOTE workshop. A demonstration Sentinel Site plot will be established at Hidden Creek for teachers and students to collect their own data related to the effort. Students and teachers will be able to compare their data with the Reserve System's data and evaluate results. Through KEEP, Reserve education staff will also use Estuaries 101, NOAA education products, and locally developed activities to cultivate understanding of climate science in students and teachers.

Climate science will be incorporated into displays at the Visitors' Center and into outreach materials (Figure 4.14). The Reserve's Sentinel Site at Hidden Creek will be highlighted in interpretive programs where appropriate. Sentinel Site work and other climate change research will be shared with the public through the Reserve's and partners' websites.

Habitat Protection Goal 3: Increase public awareness of Reserve stewardship practices, habitat-related research and habitat protection.

Education staff will develop a natural resource program for 8th to 12th grade students that includes habitat protection and restoration



Figure 4.14: Visitors exploring the displays at the Reserve Interpretive Center.

science themes. Through TOTE and other professional development workshops offered through the Reserve, teachers will be able to learn about habitat protection and restoration projects and their applications outside of the Reserve. Education Program themes will continue to promote the importance of habitat protection and water quality.

Invasive Species Goal 3: Reduce the impact of invasive species negatively affecting or threatening the Reserve.

Science service projects will be offered to KEEP participants and provide for the control of invasive species within the Reserve. Summer camp and stewardship events will also provide Reserve program participants with opportunities to learn about invasive species and their control. Students and teachers will learn how to identify and properly remove locally important invaders. Projects may also include monitoring for effective removal of invasive species.

Invasive Species Goal 4: Increase distribution of information about the status and impacts of invasive species to diverse audiences.

The Reserve will work with partners to make invasive species education materials available to KEEP participants and the general public. Invasive species education will be delivered at targeted outreach events. Education staff will create a KEEP activity that addresses the impact and ecology of invasive species.

Intended Outcomes

In general, outcomes of education activities typically relate to the particular audience and method of interaction, where the introduction

of content and teaching materials serves a specific purpose. The following reflects desired outcomes for formal and informal audiences:

- Formal: Coastal and estuarine watershed education experiences are integrated with teaching in schools using best practices in field-based education.
- Formal: Teachers have access to and use the tools, support, training and resources necessary to incorporate watershed and coastal education experiences into their curriculum.
- Formal and informal: The frequency and quality of coastal and estuarine education for program participants is increased within the focal area in southwestern Oregon and is informed by Reserve System science, data products, curriculum, and tools.
- Informal: Participants have a better understanding of estuaries and how their daily lives connect to natural habitats.

Behavior change may also be specific to the particular program, method, or activity conducted and therefore measurement of the change depends upon the anticipated actions. Ultimately, intended outcomes align with the Reserve's mission of creating a public that values and protects the estuary.

With this perspective, the following changes in behavior have been identified as desirable achievements that may be measured through pre- and post-program assessments or other means of evaluation:

- Participants exhibit greater understanding and appreciation for estuaries and coastal environments and the values these natural systems provide.

- Participants partake in actions to protect, restore, and maintain estuaries and coastal environments.

By focusing on the priority goals in the Strategic Plan (Chapter 3) over the next several years, the Education Program will provide an improved understanding of the three priority issues as described below:

Climate change: Through TOTE and KEEP, teachers and students will use climate related data to advance their understanding of climate change science. Visitors will be aware of the climate change research conducted by the Reserve and use the Reserve as an information source.

Habitat protection: Best stewardship practices will be demonstrated by the Reserve. A natural resource program for high school students will be developed and assessed. There will be an increase in the use of data by teachers and students to advance their understanding of the need for habitat protection. Students and the general public will help to collect data for the Reserve and will learn about methods and applications of habitat protection in the region.

Invasive species: A better network of partners and shared resources will be able to address invasive species issues. Invasive species education materials and activities will be developed and shared. Program participants will be able to identify and safely remove invasive species. There will be a reduction in the amount of invasive species on the Reserve.

Program Integration

Education staff and volunteers, and the activities they typically lead, are the primary



Figure 4.15: Education Coordinator Joy Tally, left, shows teachers how to pull in a beach seine net on a mudflat near Charleston.

tools for sharing the Reserve’s research with students, teachers, and other program participants. One of the field experiences currently offered by the Reserve is the opportunity for students to participate in ongoing fish seining research (Figure 4.15).

Science, training, and education staff join forces to represent the Reserve at community festivals and other public events. Volunteers at the Reserve provide a substantial service by helping to interpret or demonstrate the results of the Reserve’s science projects. The AmeriCorps supported Estuary Explorers program brings together volunteering with science education to underfunded local schools.

Education staff, when needed, assist science staff with research and monitoring activities. In turn, science staff working directly on research, monitoring, and stewardship activities occasionally teach classes, present at workshops, or lead field trips. Science, education, and training staff also collaborate to develop funding proposals that include both scientific and educational objectives.

Results

Education Program results are shared frequently with local, state, and regional audiences through professional conferences and directly upon request with partners. Presentations highlight tools, curriculum, resources, and pedagogy. Professional sharing is facilitated by the various networks with which the Reserve works; Northwest Aquatic and Marine Educators, the Oregon Environmental Literacy Program, the Oregon Coast STEM Hub and OCEP.

Results are regularly documented for the Reserve Management Commission in thrice-annual reports including periodic data summaries and narratives describing education program activities. Occasional presentations are provided to the management commission detailing specific aspects of the education program including status updates on special projects, documentation of changes in education techniques, and review of planning studies such as needs assessment and market analysis results.

Further documentation of results is included in periodic grant related reports for specific projects funded through external sources. The level of documentation of results for projects such as the OCEP provides substantial benefit to the overall management of South Slough's Education Program and has been used by partner institutions to inform their own program development.

Performance Monitoring & Evaluation

Current evaluation methods for education are limited. Measures of audience impacts are var-

ied and lack cohesiveness. Without appropriate evaluation tools and a strategy to employ these tools and assess the results, the impacts of the various elements of education programs are not well documented. One of the core principles in the Reserve Strategic Plan is to develop an integrated evaluation plan to assess the effectiveness of education programs to reach key audiences and address priority issues.

Evaluation metrics used at the Reserve include documenting basic performance indicators, such as number of participants, duration of programs, duration of preparatory effort, content defined by learning objectives, and post program anecdotal evidence provided by instructors. A limited number of post program evaluation surveys are provided for specific types of programs.

The most comprehensively evaluated aspect of education programming is the teacher training associated with OCEP. These activities are evaluated by design with tools and techniques informed by a professional, independent evaluator. Evidence and substantial documentation of outcome achievement is available through summary reports, provided over the course of the project's evolution, from 2009 to present. This work, along with support from the Reserve System's TOTE work group, will ensure that teacher professional development will continue to be modeled on best practices and lessons learned.

In the coming years, the Reserve will work to develop a comprehensive education evaluation strategy, including identifying appropriate evaluation tools, incorporated with an overall strategy for measuring effectiveness.

Specifically, staff needs to understand the impact of two elements of the education program: KEEP and public interpretation. Multiple challenges exist in building or selecting an appropriate set of evaluation tools that will consistently yield meaningful results.

Program designs, including specific learning objectives, exist for most programs. However, current staff lacks the capacity to review and synthesize these data in a comprehensive way, which can be used to inform the development of an evaluation strategy. Support for this work has been sought through the NOAA Hollings Scholar program. While the funding for this scholarship has been awarded, and qualified applicants have been sought for several years, the Reserve has failed to attract a qualified candidate.

During the next five years, the Reserve will reconsider its strategy for accomplishing this work, perhaps using funding provided through one of its education partners.

Education Program Needs and Opportunities

Needs and Capacity

Between ongoing programs, formal and informal education requests, and established professional development events, the Education Program at the Reserve is operating at capacity. Capabilities of the Education Program are already largely determined by supplemental grant funding, success with volunteer recruitment and training, and assistance from partner institutions. And the demand for education continues to grow as the staff builds awareness of the Reserve throughout the region.

The results of the market analysis and needs assessment indicate a strong interest in grade level-appropriate content and curricula related to Reserve System driven coastal science. As a part of the overall Education Program needs, curricula review is important to establish consistency with NOAA's education priorities and the NGSS. However, the capacity at the Reserve to develop new curricula, or revise existing curricula to integrate new science and data, is limited. As programs and activities are modified, alignment to current science and NGSS are emphasized.

As staff time and opportunity permits, the Education Program would like to revise current educational offerings and develop new formal education opportunities. This would include building stronger KEEP curricula. Outreach for new and revised education programs will rely heavily on digital communications, which is another area that needs development. An updated Reserve website with the ability for on-line registration will help program participants to interact with the Reserve.

Stakeholders have also identified teacher trainings as a high need in the region. Consequently, emphasis has been placed on providing teachers with professional development opportunities facilitated by the Reserve. This work is undertaken primarily through partnerships and successful funding proposals. While the direct consequence of this approach is an increase in the number of formal educators using the resources provided, these activities also contribute to an increase in demand for staff and volunteers to lead learning experiences for students. Raising funds through grants, fees for

teacher training, and collaboration with partner institutions, are critical determining factors in the continued success of increased requests.

Regarding informal education, successful recruitment and training of volunteers is the most likely method of enhancing capacity to do work. Seasonal program demands during spring, summer, and fall regularly outstrip the capacity of the Reserve to meet all program requests. Development of programs supported by fees and administered by the Friends of South Slough has proven an effective means of establishing programs such as the Summer Science Camps. This pathway also affords opportunities to augment education staff with seasonal, temporary positions. Nonetheless, the Education Program would benefit from more permanent, full-time staff who could build capacity in a sustainable fashion. For more information on this see the Administration needs section (Chapter 5).

Limitations and Opportunities

The geographic distance from major metropolitan areas has been a challenge for the education program. Schools and potential program participants must make a substantial commitment of time and resources to visit the Reserve. This barrier has been exacerbated in recent years by poor economic conditions, in the state and the nation, which have negatively impacted school budgets and affected travel trends.

The declines in traveling program participation have been offset somewhat by an approach that focuses more heavily on partnerships with coastal education providers to hold events at other estuaries in Oregon. The opportunity to regionalize the understanding of Pacific Northwest estuaries and coastal watersheds is consistent with the Reserve's mission, and reduces

the emphasis on classroom visits to the Reserve. Pursuing these solid, long-term partnerships is an opportunity the Reserve continues to develop.

Furthermore, the Reserve will continue to emphasize teacher training and alignment with TOTE and KEEP to broaden the impact of educational resources and address opportunities. In particular, the Reserve will target recruitment efforts for teacher training workshops within the six counties of southwestern Oregon.

The limitation of staff capacity is significant, as the demand for programs increase and the opportunities to advance the Reserve's mission are restricted by available personnel and resources. Opportunities to further expand the education staff through partnerships with programs like AmeriCorps, internships, and trained volunteers, must be considered as only a temporary means of advancing the overall effort.

Grant funded opportunities are another temporary means of advancing the program's goals, while providing an important testing ground for ideas, techniques, and development of new approaches and partnerships. The drawback to funding positions through grants and partnerships, is those positions frequently require new initiatives which increase workload but not necessarily program capacity. A more realistic long-term approach will involve securing permanent financial resources to fund staff positions dedicated to areas with growth potential, such as teacher professional development, and service in support of KEEP field and classroom experiences.

South Slough Reserve Coastal Training Program

Geographic Scope

The Reserve's Coastal Training Program (CTP) provides training, technical assistance, and information to coastal managers and decision makers in the lower Columbia biogeographic region. Within this region, activities are focused in Coos Bay, Oregon's largest coastal population center, and along the southern Oregon coast. While coastal training audiences occur primarily around the Coos Bay area and along the southern Oregon coast, they also extend throughout the coastal zone. Partnerships leverage coastal training to inform decision-making at regional scales.

Information Gained Since Last Plan

New information is available about the risk that climate change poses to Oregon's coastal communities (see sidebar).

New information is available about the fate of Oregon's inter-tidal marshes as sea levels rise. Although the greatest hope for inter-tidal marshes is that they will accumulate sufficient sediment to keep up with rising sea levels, or else migrate to suitable land upslope, Oregon's coastal margin is paralleled by steep coastal mountains that limit the areas available for marshes to migrate. What land might be available is often privately owned and used for other purposes, typically agriculture.

Rising seas also pose a significant threat to transportation throughout Oregon's coastal zone since the majority of roads and highways were built along estuarine and lowland river

shores, reducing the availability of marsh migration zones, and exacerbating the threat to critical infrastructure from sea level rise.

There is new information about the role of estuaries as sinks for carbon, and about the utility of salt marshes and eelgrasses to sequester carbon in a process now referred to as blue carbon or coastal carbon. Estuarine wetlands may be among the most efficient lands, acre for acre, for storing carbon (Pendleton and Sutton-Grier, et al, 2013). The CTP and Reserve science staff are assisting the Pacific Northwest Coastal Blue Carbon Working Group to explore various aspects of carbon management in collaboration with partners in Oregon, Washington, and California.

Climate related risks to coastal communities

- Longer, more intensive coastal storms
- Higher, more energetic waves
- Increased flooding in bays and estuaries
- Erosion of beaches, coastal bluffs
- Damage to shoreline property and infrastructure (e.g., roads and highways)
- Ocean acidification and hypoxia
- Changes in currents, upwelling, and ocean circulation
- Reduced water availability in some areas
- Increased risk of wildfire
- Invasions of non-native, noxious species

(Dello and Mote 2010; DLCD 2011)

There is new information about the need for improved storm water management in coastal communities using green infrastructure and low-impact designs, and new interest in determining how green infrastructure might be used to protect critical coastal infrastructure (e.g., highways and bridges in low-lying coastal areas adjacent to eroding bluffs) from erosion and floods.

There is new awareness of the needs of computer mapping specialists and geographic data managers and administrators for training and assistance to address a range of challenges and barriers that limit the usefulness of environmental data and data products, services, or tools.

Finally, a major source of new local information gained since the last management plan is the Community, Lands, & Waterways Data Source, developed through the Partnership for Coastal Watersheds. The Data Source is a detailed assessment of local environmental and socio-economic attributes, and discusses potential effects of climate change on various aspects of the Coos estuary.

Target Audience

Target audiences have remained largely consistent since 2006 and will continue to include entities active in habitat restoration and management: planners, watershed councils, sovereign tribal nations, conservation groups, and state and federal agencies. Audiences will expand to include engineers, construction contractors, municipal officials, and others engaged in storm water management; computer mapping specialists and data managers and administrators, and geographic information specialists working

in related fields such as geospatial and marine spatial planning. Engaging local businesses also appears to be an emerging coastal training audience at several reserves. The CTP coordinator will also reach out to agricultural stakeholders to increase awareness of sea level rise and marsh migration.

Coastal Training Program Themes

The Reserve's coastal training strategy identifies six priorities including: a) habitat restoration (Figure 4.16), b) invasive species, c) water quality, d) near shore ocean processes, e) human impacts on protected areas, and f) climate, coastal hazards, and energy. The priorities have been in place since the program's inception. They support and extend the Reserve System's strategic priorities, as outlined in this management plan. For example, the near shore ocean processes priority supports coastal training related to ocean acidification and hypoxia.



Figure 4.16: Wetland scientists, educators and stakeholders tour the Ni-les'tun Marsh at Bandon National Wildlife Refuge during the Restoration Project Monitoring workshop in 2013.

Partners

Primary CTP partners include Oregon's Coastal Management Program (OCMP) and Oregon Sea Grant, both of which are required by NOAA as program advisors. Other partners include Oregon State University Extension Service, the Coos Watershed Association, the Institute for Applied Ecology, the Oregon Chapter of the Urban and Regional Information Services Association (ORURISA), the South Coast GIS Users Group (SCUG), Southwest Oregon Community College, Oregon Coast Community College, the Pacific Marine and Estuarine Fish Habitat Partnership, the Pacific Northwest Coastal Blue Carbon Working Group, and NOAA-OCM West Coast Regional Office.

The CTP recently engaged with new partners (e.g., Oregon Department of Transportation (ODOT), Green Girl Landscape Design) to plan and present training in best practices for using green infrastructure storm water management in small western Oregon cities. The CTP will work with NOAA OCM (West Coast office), and ODOT to explore ways to extend green infrastructure to protect shorelines and critical infrastructure, respectively, along the dynamic Pacific Northwest coast.

Potential new partners may include local governments, agricultural groups, local businesses, stakeholders active in coastal hazard resiliency planning and other activities related to climate, energy and coastal hazards.

Staff, Facilities, and Infrastructure

CTP staff consists of the program coordinator, who is assisted by other education program staff when applicable. The CTP coordinator

works out of a dedicated office at the Interpretive Center and has access to vehicles, presentation and communications equipment, and can draw upon the expertise of science and stewardship staff as needed.

Facilities for training are available at the Interpretive Center auditorium, which can accommodate about 30-40 people for workshops that involve break-out groups. Travel often presents an obstacle to participation in trainings; as a result, CTP often looks for opportunities to use venues more central to the geographic distribution of the target audience (e.g., Coos Bay for a southern coastal event; Newport or Lincoln City for a coast wide audience).

In addition to the Visitors' Center at the Reserve, local training venues include community colleges, Coos History Museum, the Mill Casino and Hotel, Bandon National Wildlife Refuge office, and Curry County Electrical Co-op. The OIMB, local community centers, and public libraries also provide venues. State and federal agencies sometimes have large meeting rooms or multi-purpose areas that they will make available for workshops. Local business and service organizations looking for speakers can also be an outlet for CTP programming and can often provide the meeting space.

Coastal Training Program Delivery

System-wide Programs, National Programs, and National Priorities

The CTP coordinator collaborates with coastal training staff at other reserves and with NOAA's Office for Coastal Management to address

biogeographical regional issues and system-wide work. These efforts include service on the Reserve System's committees and work groups, coastal training sector work groups, and contributions to various grant funded projects, such as those funded through the Science Collaborative (UM). The CTP will be contributing to the development of Sentinel Site outreach products; national coastal training products and services; system-wide capacity for unmanned aerial vehicles and systems (drones) (Figure 4.17), and the adaptation of green infrastructural methods generally to improve coastal hazard resilience in the Pacific Northwest.



Figure 4.17: John Bragg, CTP coordinator at South Slough Reserve, and Sue Bickford (geographic information systems (GIS) specialist at Wells Reserve, Maine) display aerial drones used for monitoring and high-resolution, low altitude imaging at an unmanned aerial vehicles workshop, Sept. 16, 2016, in Lincoln City, Oregon.

Activities and Methodologies

To receive CTP funding, NOAA initially requires each reserve to conduct a training market analysis, identify one or more target audiences, assess those audiences' needs for training, and develop a training strategy. Training strategies are updated every five years. NOAA does not require a new needs assessment as part of the revision; in practice, though, CTP

coordinators are continually reassessing their training audiences' needs using on-line surveys, informal means, or both. Need assessments take into account the recommendations of OCMP and Oregon Sea Grant, of Reserve staff, of stakeholder groups such as the Partnership for Coastal Watersheds, PMEP, ORURISA, and the PNW Coastal Blue Carbon Working Group, and coastal businesses.

Training typically involves workshops that combine lecture presentations, discussions, small group activities, and field trips when appropriate.

The Reserve will submit a revised strategy for NOAA's approval in 2017. The strategy will emphasize new topics and audiences identified in 2016, including implementing green infrastructure and low impact designs for storm water management, adapting green infrastructure to protect sensitive resources and critical infrastructure from coastal hazards, climate change adaptation and resilience, and computer mapping accessibility to inform coastal resource management. Addressing this range of topics will address all six of the coastal training priorities.

Coastal Training Program Goals for 2017-2022

Program delivery for all Reserve sectors, including the CTP, will be guided by the three priority issues identified in the Reserve's Strategic Plan (see Chapter 3): *climate change*, *habitat protection*, and *invasive species*. The specific goals related to addressing these priority issues for the CTP are outlined below, along with details of how program delivery actions will address the goals:

Climate change Goal 3: Increase Reserve understanding of the relationships between climate change and ecosystem functions in Pacific Northwest marine and estuarine environments.

Coastal training staff will work with Reserve science staff and partners, including the Coos County Planning Office and the Science Collaborative, to organize and facilitate end user workshops that will inform the Reserve of community needs related to climate change and ecosystem function. The CTP will also help facilitate the Partnership for Coastal Watersheds exploration of a climate change vulnerability assessment for Coos Bay. The CTP will assist the Pacific Northwest Coastal Blue Carbon Working Group to better understand carbon sequestration potentials in Pacific Northwest estuaries by conducting a needs assessment of end users in 2017, and that providing feedback to other Reserve programs. The CTP will also work with science staff to determine how to increase decision makers' awareness of the Reserve's Sentinel Site program and data.

Climate change Goal 4: Increase communications about actual and potential climate change impacts to diverse audiences.

The CTP, through its week-to-week work with OCMP, has identified the need for training to address a variety of coastal hazards and increase the resiliency of communities to climate change effects. The CTP will work with partners and stakeholders to improve coastal communities' abilities for response to catastrophic storms and floods, or earthquakes and tsunamis, and resultant loss of critical infrastructure. The CTP will also work with ORURISA to resolve data challenges and barriers finding

and using relevant data to address these needs.

The CTP will work with municipal, state, private, and NOAA partners to increase understanding of green infrastructure as a lower-cost alternative to reduce runoff, pollution, and undesirable impacts to downstream habitats and species; attract new stakeholders and audiences related to green infrastructure, and explore green infrastructure applications beyond storm water management to improve resilience to climate-related coastal hazards in the Pacific Northwest (Figure 4.18).

Using the results of a survey of local service clubs conducted in 2016, the CTP will present a series of at least five lectures on environmental change related to sea level rise, invasive species, changes in water quality, and other issues identified in the survey assessment. The lectures will be presented in an overall context of improving the resilience of coastal communities. The CTP will work with science staff and the Oregon Ocean Acidification and Hypoxia Monitoring Team to facilitate outreach and public awareness of ocean acidification and its effects in estuaries.



Figure 4.18: Audience at the Reserve's 'Introducing Green Infrastructure for Coastal Resilience' workshop, March 25, 2016.

Habitat protection Goal 3: Increase public awareness of Reserve stewardship practices, habitat-related research, and habitat protection.

The CTP will work with the stewardship program to incorporate habitat protection and restoration education into lecture series and outreach programs; provide information, training, or both related to preserving or restoring habitat connectivity in coastal ecosystems. Trainings will be planned to consider habitat protection and restoration as tools for accomplishing multiple goals. The CTP will use projects currently being planned for the Wasson Creek watershed and other Reserve-managed lands in a conservation action education framework.

The CTP will work with science staff and partners (Coos Watershed Association, Gorse Action Group, etc.) to increase awareness of invasive species, their impacts to landscapes, and developments in control. The CTP will also seek opportunities to hold conversations with rural and agricultural stakeholders to provide them with options about the fate of coastal marshes in the face of rising seas.

Invasive Species Goal 4: Increase distribution of information about the status and impacts of invasive species to diverse audiences.

The CTP will incorporate invasive species themes in both decision maker workshops and as an element of lectures on environmental change, with the goal of improving awareness and understanding of strategies to reduce the spread of invasive species.

Intended Outcomes

Outcomes of the Reserve's CTP efforts over the 2017-2022 period include improved regional understanding of climate change, habitat protection, and invasive species issues and increased access to information, skills, and methods for decision makers and program participants.

The Reserve expects that participants in coastal training workshops or courses will apply the lessons they have learned in their day to day work. Post-event evaluations generally demonstrate that participants have increased their knowledge and understanding of the material presented, and affirm their intent to apply the lessons learned.

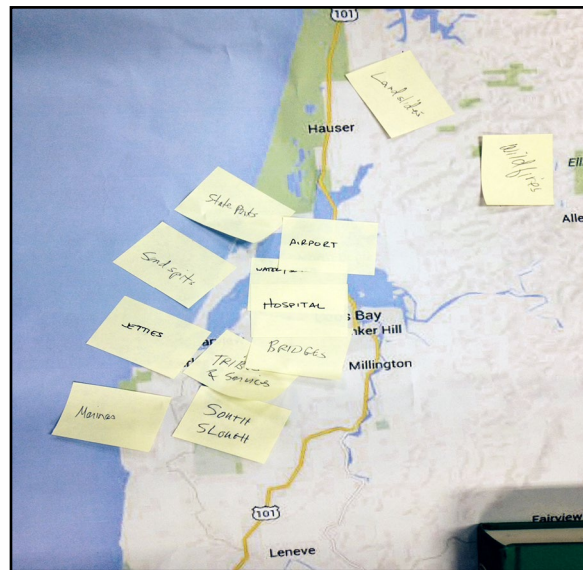


Figure 4.19: At a 'Climate Adaptation for Coastal Communities' workshop in Newport, coastal training participants used Post-it notes to locate coastal resilience hazards in Oregon's coastal zone.

Program Integration

The CTP coordinator participates in regularly scheduled full-staff, education-staff and science-staff meetings to identify links, overlaps, and points of intersection for training or technical assistance. All of the Reserve's staff maintains close communications to ensure that various disciplines are aware of needs and opportunities to engage in joint action. Through the implementation of the cross-sector 2017-2022 Strategic Plan (Chapter 3), CTP will better integrate with other Reserve program areas. For example, CTP will work more closely with science staff to implement the collective actions required to achieve climate change objectives and goals.

Results and Evaluations

Training is evaluated using metrics adapted by the Reserve System and reported to the Reserve System's performance monitoring data base. Typically target audiences voluntarily fill out a feedback form after training. Two other methods for CTP evaluation are feedback from networking relationships with training partners and NOAA's periodic Section 312 reviews of the Reserve's operations and programs. Feedback from training partners is routinely and informally incorporated into the training strategy. CTP staff and training partners invariably compare notes on what worked and what didn't after a training event.

Coastal Training Program Needs and Opportunities

Needs and Capacity

The CTP will revise its training strategy in 2017. The CTP is in the process of reviewing previous needs assessments, reaching out to newly identified target audiences, and developing training and technical assistance opportunities accordingly. Although the coastal training program is currently operating within capacity demands, a need for additional staff and resource support may arise as new projects are developed.

Limitations and Opportunities

Travel distances pose substantial barriers to participating in CTP activities and events at the Reserve. Training to address the needs of a coastal zone wide audience, anywhere in the coastal zone, can involve as much as a half day for one way travel to the training venue. To address this barrier the CTP tries to hold training events on the south coast, but depending upon the mix of training partners, funders, and stakeholders, and the travel limitations of the target audience, often a centrally-located workshop venue is required.

As CTP expands its target audience, it is also clear that more information is needed about the training needs of local governments, businesses, and agricultural stakeholders. Local training workshops in the cities of Coos Bay and North Bend and at the Reserve would be feasible and appropriate for these new audiences.

South Slough Reserve Public Involvement Program

The Reserve is a community resource that naturally draws the interest of the public. The public involvement program provides a means for people to make meaningful connections to the Reserve by increasing active involvement. In turn, these individuals provide support and assistance to the Reserve by helping fulfill its operational, research, stewardship and educational goals. There are three main components of the public involvement program:

Volunteers

Volunteers donate their time by participating in activities related to ongoing research, education, and facilities projects at the Reserve.

Interns

Interns receive real-world work experience and training and often receive a small stipend in exchange for their commitment to a set amount of time and involvement in a project

Information outreach

This involves the Reserve's participation at community events and festivals, marketing activities, and participation in community groups, organizations, and boards

Geographic Scope

The geographic scope of the public involvement program primarily includes, but is not limited to, the Southern Oregon coast region.

Target Audiences

Target audiences for the volunteer and intern programs include older teens, college students, and adults of all ages and backgrounds. The volunteer and intern programs typically target residents of Coos County, but also include students from distant locations who are studying in Oregon.

The internship program has expanded the scope of the audience to a national level with the attraction of being able to participate in active scientific research.

Information outreach has a larger target audience which includes all ages and backgrounds, but primarily focuses on residents and visitors to the Southern Oregon coast. In general, anyone who is able to travel to the Reserve and participate in public programs or take advantage of the amenities offered at the Visitors' Center is part of the target audience.



Figure 4.20: Octoberfish festival in Charleston, Oregon.

Partners

The Public Involvement Program partners with many community and educational organizations including: The Friends of South Slough, Bay Area Chamber of Commerce, Southwestern Oregon Community College, the Oregon State University System, North Bend, Coos Bay and Bandon high schools, the Bay Area Visitor and Convention Bureau, Coos Bay and North Bend downtown associations, the Charleston Merchant's Association, Surfrider Foundation, South Coast Business Employment, Stop Oregon Litter and Vandalism (SOLV), the Charleston Community Enhancement Corporation, the Coos Watershed Association, and the South Coast Development Council Rural Tourism Studio.

Staff & Facilities

The establishment of the Public Involvement Coordinator position in 2001 provided the Reserve with a staff member dedicated to the development and implementation of a public involvement program. The program includes coordinating volunteers and interns, in addition to public outreach in community organizations and at local events. The Public Involvement Coordinator works closely with the Friends of South Slough (FOSS) to coordinate volunteer activities and to implement the internship program, which is funded through grants awarded to FOSS. The Public Involvement Coordinator is assisted by other education staff when applicable for training volunteers and interns.

The Visitors' Center and Science Laboratory serve as the primary workstations for volunteers and interns. While the field

components of many projects occur throughout the Reserve and in the community, the starting and ending point for most activities occurs at one of these two sites. Additionally, volunteers and interns with the appropriate training and licensing, drive state vehicles and operate vessels, tools, and machinery associated with the projects that they accept.

The Public Involvement Program also uses folding tables, display boards, traveling exhibits, festival tents, signs and banners when performing off site marketing and outreach duties. Developments in technology and culture have allowed the program to harness the power of social media in the absence of a dedicated marketing budget.



Figure 4.21: Participants at the Reserve's 40th anniversary event helping load canoes after a paddle trip.

Public Involvement Program Delivery

Volunteer Program

The Reserve continually invests in volunteer recruitment and training, which has paid off by increasing community support and supplementing staff work. For example, in the 2013-2015 Oregon fiscal biennium, volunteers contributed 12,323 hours of their time and their talents to support the mission of the Reserve, a value of \$274,958.

The public involvement coordinator is responsible for the development, coordination and maintenance of the volunteer program. The Reserve has a Volunteer Resource Handbook, which includes information related to the Reserve's mission, resources, programs, and operations. Each volunteer is provided with this handbook, along with general training about the Reserve and specialized training for projects, if applicable. The FOSS, youth work crews, AmeriCorps, local service programs, and individuals from the community all provide volunteer services for the Reserve. Volunteers' contributions of time and skill greatly enhance the programs and operations of the Reserve.

Volunteers assist with visitor services, education programs, trail improvements, habitat restoration, monitoring, and research projects. By sharing their enthusiasm for and knowledge of South Slough, volunteers enhance visitors' experiences and foster interest and awareness of the Reserve throughout the local region. The Reserve recognizes an obligation to provide interested volunteers with rewarding and enriching opportunities in exchange for their efforts.

Internship Program

The Southern Oregon coast community has a need for those entering the workforce to develop specialized skills through exposure to a variety of work experiences, particularly in natural resource-related science and education careers. The Reserve plan for addressing this need began with a two-year AmeriCorps VISTA position funded through the Friends of South Slough Reserve to assist the Reserve in developing an internship program. Since

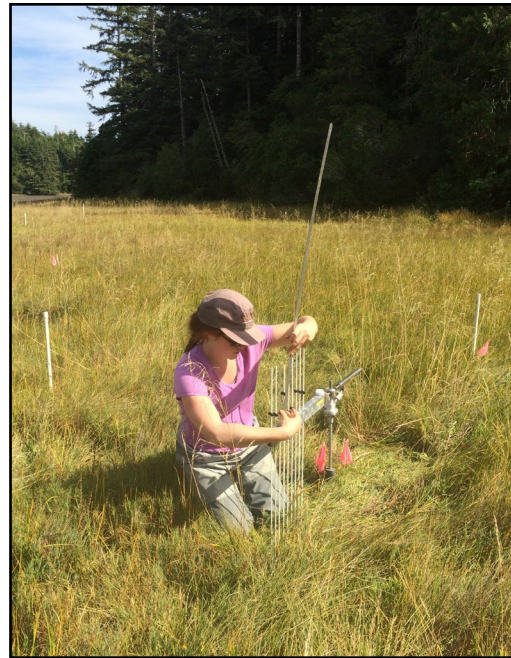


Figure 4.22: Friends of South Slough intern Zoe Shapira collecting surface elevation data at Hidden Creek marsh as part of her Sentinel Site internship.

the program's implementation in 2012, 53 individuals have participated. The goal of the program is to provide valuable training and job specific skills in the science, education, and natural resource fields while instilling the importance of estuaries and fostering stewardship for them (Figure 4.22).

The internship program also helps extend Reserve capacity to develop and implement programs and deliver community services. Some specific activities supported by the internship program include; monitoring reserve vegetation and habitats, inventory of plant and animal species, aquarium husbandry, mapping, environmental education, forestry, and trails maintenance, interpretive and administrative services. The Public Involvement Coordinator works with staff to develop internship job descriptions and to appropriately match program participants to operational needs at the Reserve.

Information Outreach

The profile of the Reserve has been raised by the public involvement coordinator's active role on a variety of local organizations' boards and committees. Along with outreach at a variety of local events, this has helped to build community awareness of the Reserve and the work done by the Reserve. Having a bi-weekly booth at the seasonal Coos Bay Farmers Market for example, increases awareness of the Reserve. Information outreach also includes: advertising programs with a bimonthly calendar delivered electronically to subscribers, local visitor centers and libraries; Public Service Announcements; fliers posted at community establishments; and managing Reserve social media accounts.

Public Involvement Program Goals 2017-2022

Generally, program delivery for all Reserve sectors, including Public Involvement, will be guided by the three priority issues in the Reserve's Strategic Plan (see Chapter 3): *climate change, habitat protection, and invasive species*. For each priority issue, details are provided below on how Public Involvement program delivery actions will address the strategic goals:

Climate Change Goal 4: Increase communications about actual and potential climate change impacts to diverse audiences.

Public outreach staff will contribute to achieving this climate change goal by emphasizing Reserve science research (including Sentinel Sites) and community level solutions at public outreach events. For example, the bi-monthly newsletter will

continue to track the Sentinel Site Research as well as other Reserve projects tied to climate change. Volunteer training will include methods for addressing climate change with the general public. Volunteers will then use that training as they provide outreach at tabling events and festival booths highlighting Reserve projects (Figure 4.23).



Figure 4.23: Attendees of the Stand Up for the Bay event learning about slough creatures.

Habitat Protection Goal 1: Help with assessing and monitoring habitats in the Coos estuary in order to characterize conditions and changes in habitat use and availability.

Public outreach staff will contribute to this goal by engaging interns to assist science staff with mapping and ground-truthing as part of their job-training experience.

Habitat Protection Goal 3: Increase public awareness of Reserve stewardship practices, habitat-related research, and habitat protection.

The Public Involvement Program will help develop educational tools that build public awareness and engagement in stewardship practices at the Reserve. For example, the program works with the Friends of South Slough to sponsor stewardship activities, like invasive species pulls. Public Involvement

will also identify best practices that help staff reduce ecological impacts from special events and programs. For example, at events where there is food consumption, Public Involvement staff will encourage participants to bring their own beverage containers and recycle/compost remaining waste.

Carpooling is recommended for all travel and teleconferencing is used when possible. For the general public using the Reserve trail system, staff will promote “Pack it in/Pack it Out”.

Invasive Species Goal 1: Help characterize and monitor the extent of invasive species affecting the Reserve.

Public Involvement will recruit and engage interns to assist science staff with mapping and ground-truthing as part of their job-training experience. Public Involvement will also identify and develop opportunities to engage the public, including volunteers, in the monitoring of invasive species. This could be done through a citizen science program.

Invasive Species Goal 3: Reduce the impact of invasive species negatively affecting or threatening the Reserve.

Public involvement staff will assist with conducting at least six annual events for the control of invasive species in the Reserve. Staff will help secure interested community groups for control events and assist with providing training for staff, volunteers, interns, and students that help them identify and properly remove invasive species.

Over the term of this management plan, the public involvement program strives to:

- Expand the internship program by increasing funds available to interns as well as building more support for mentors
- Train volunteers to speak with a range of audiences about climate change impacts, stewardship practices, habitat protection, and invasive species impacts
- Develop new outreach materials (print and electronic) to address priority areas such as climate change.
- Streamline record keeping methods for recording volunteer and intern hours through a web based system
- Recruit a marketing intern to assist with the expansion of social media outreach and community group participation
- Liaise with the Friends of South Slough Reserve as they develop their strategic plan providing input and direction that coincides with the Reserve plan

Invasive Species Goal 4: Increase distribution of information about the status and impacts of invasive species to diverse audiences.

The Public Involvement Program will support internships and volunteer coordination for invasive species projects and outreach. Staff will utilize opportunities to post current findings related to invasive species on the Reserve social media pages. Staff will also partner on events with other community organizations that focus on control and education regarding invasive species.

Program Integration

The Public Involvement program supports Reserve programs by providing skilled volunteer and intern support to expand the work of paid staff. Additionally, Public Involvement provides marketing for programs and informational content via the website, newsletter, and social media for all Reserve programs. Through a presence at community events and in community organizations, the Public Involvement program builds awareness for all Reserve programs, increasing community support and knowledge even outside the Reserve boundaries.

Other programs at the Reserve provide support for Public Involvement as well. Administration oversees the Public Involvement Coordinator's work, record keeping, and reporting and provides guidance in the management of volunteers and interns as well as editorial support for media releases. Staff from all Reserve programs act as mentors for interns, assist with volunteer training, support, and collaborate on community wide events such as fairs and public speaking events.

Public Involvement Needs and Opportunities

Needs and Capacity

Since the establishment of the public involvement coordinator position in 2001, the program has grown immensely. The Reserve is networked into several community organizations and events. Consequently, public involvement staff are operating at capacity. Over the five year term of this plan, Public Involvement Program needs include:

- Continued funding for a Public Involvement Coordinator position at the Reserve
- Continued collaboration with other Reserve programs to provide volunteer/ intern training
- Funding to install web based software that can be used for on-line program registration, volunteer tracking, web based outreach, and record keeping
- The addition of an intern and/or volunteer to specifically work alongside the public involvement coordinator to implement the activities planned over the next five years (see Reserve Strategic Plan, Chapter 3).

Limitations and Opportunities

Opportunities of the Public Involvement Program include: expanding the volunteer and intern program capacity through FOSS support, building the capacity of FOSS to expand their support of Reserve programs, and marketing and sharing information in ways that coincide with the pace of modern technology.

Limitations of the Public Involvement Program include: funding for marketing, capacity of the single public involvement staff member, and volunteer and internship work limitations. While many volunteers and interns are highly skilled and dedicated individuals, they do not serve as paid staff, which limits the amount of time and the degree in which they can contribute to a program or project. The remote setting of the Reserve also makes it difficult to attract volunteers and interns who do not have their own transportation or who do not like to travel outside of nearby city limits.

References

Dello, K.D. and Mote, P.W. (Eds). (2010). *Oregon Climate Assessment Report*. Oregon Climate Change Research Institute. College of Oceanic and Atmospheric Sciences, Oregon State University, Corvallis, OR

Department of Land Conservation and Development (DLCD). (2010). Oregon Climate Change Adaptation Framework. Available on-line at http://www.oregon.gov/ENERGY/GBLWRM/docs/Framework_Final_DLCD.pdf

Gaskill T., Kulluson J., and Calvert D. (2012). Oregon Coastal Education Market Analysis and Needs Assessment Study. South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve. Charleston, OR.

Pendleton, L.H., Sutton-Grier, A.E., Gordon, D.R., Murray, B.C., Victor, B.E., Griffis, R. B., Lechuga, J.A.V., and Giri, C. (2013). Considering “Coastal Carbon” in Existing U.S. Federal Statutes and Policies, *Coastal Management*, 41:5, 439-456, DOI: 10.1080/08920753.2013.822294. Available on-line at <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/08920753.2013.822294>.

Chapter 5: Administration Plan

Organizational Framework and Management Authorities

The Reserve is a cooperative federal-state partnership between the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) and the Oregon Department of State Lands (DSL). NOAA provides funding, national guidance, and technical assistance to the Reserve; DSL contributes match funding, leadership, and administrative oversight. A memorandum of understanding outlining the agreement between NOAA and the State of Oregon is presented as Appendix D. The Reserve is also subject to oversight from the Reserve Management Commission.

The Reserve's administrative services program supports human resources, facilities and the research, education, and stewardship programs. Grant monitoring, fiscal reconciliation with DSL, and guidance for general operations are provided through administrative staff and processes. Administrative services are closely aligned with facilities operations since both support all program areas of the Reserve.

Role and Responsibility of NOAA

NOAA's Office for Coastal Management (OCM) administers the overall National Estuarine Research Reserve System (Reserve System). The OCM disburses and oversees expenditures of federal funds. The OCM also coordinates the design and implementation of system-wide programs, provides guidance for the development of Reserve System policies, and is responsible for ensuring that the Reserve is managed according to Reserve System's

regulations. The Reserve applies annually for funds from NOAA that are used to support research, education, stewardship programs, and Reserve operations.

NOAA funds may also be requested for special projects, facilities construction, and land acquisition. NOAA guidelines require a 30% non-federal cost share for operation and construction awards and a 50% cost share for acquisition. The Reserve also applies for and is dependent on grants and contracts from outside of NOAA, to support many of the projects undertaken by the Reserve's programs.

As required by federal regulations (15 C.F.R. § 921.40), NOAA periodically evaluates the performance of each Reserve for compliance with federal requirements and with the Reserve's federally-approved management plan. The last performance review (312 Evaluation) of South Slough programs and operations was conducted in 2015.

Role and Responsibility of DSL

Since the Reserve's creation in 1974, it has been partnered with the Oregon Department of State Lands. DSL is a state agency under jurisdiction of the State Land Board, which is composed of the Governor of Oregon, the Oregon Secretary of State, and the Oregon State Treasurer (Figure 5.1). The responsibilities of DSL include stewardship of wetlands, waterways, and other state managed lands; this mission aligns well with the Reserve's goal to improve the stewardship and understanding of Pacific Northwest estuaries, which makes the agency a good fit.

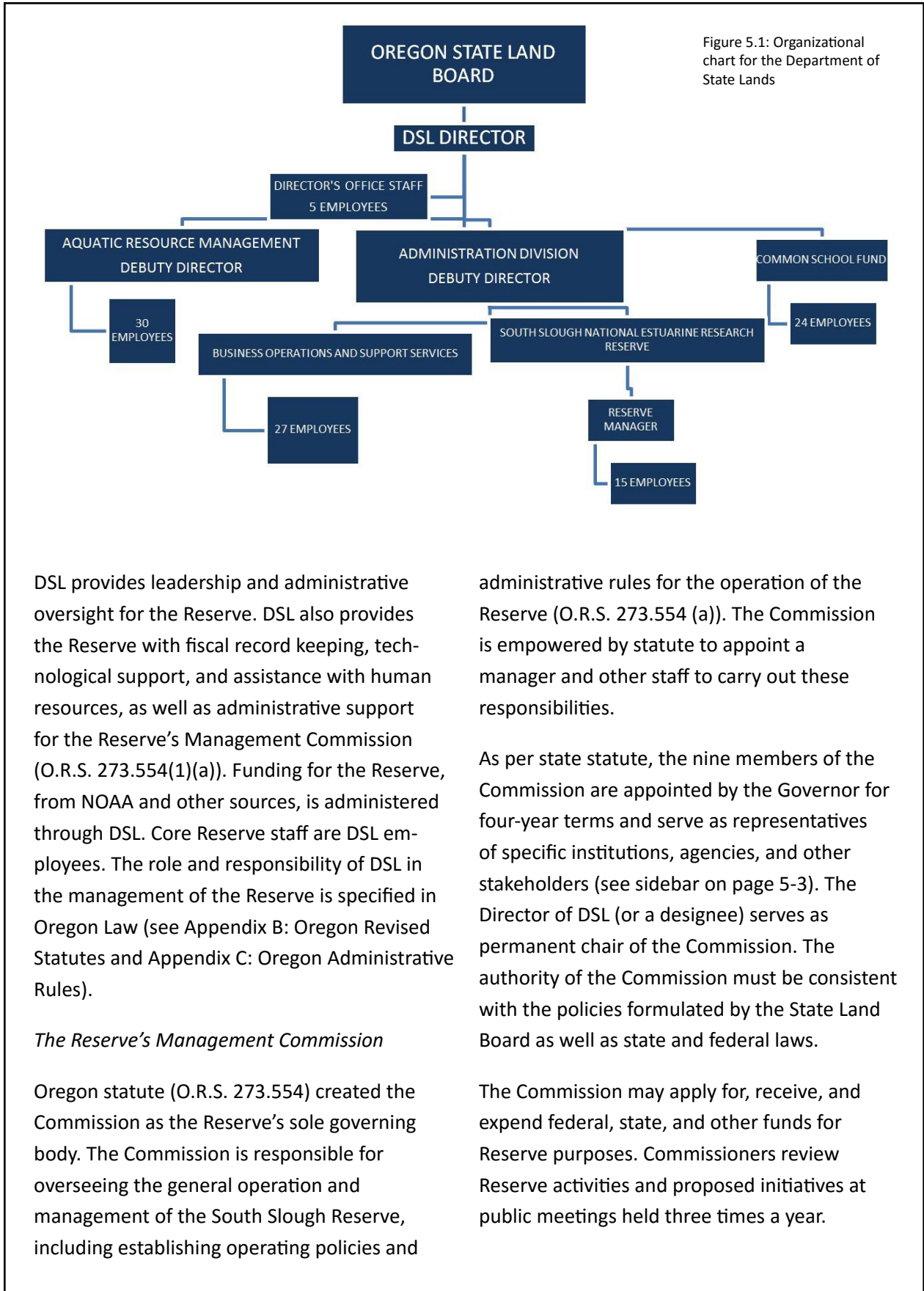


Figure 5.1: Organizational chart for the Department of State Lands

DSL provides leadership and administrative oversight for the Reserve. DSL also provides the Reserve with fiscal record keeping, technological support, and assistance with human resources, as well as administrative support for the Reserve’s Management Commission (O.R.S. 273.554(1)(a)). Funding for the Reserve, from NOAA and other sources, is administered through DSL. Core Reserve staff are DSL employees. The role and responsibility of DSL in the management of the Reserve is specified in Oregon Law (see Appendix B: Oregon Revised Statutes and Appendix C: Oregon Administrative Rules).

The Reserve’s Management Commission

Oregon statute (O.R.S. 273.554) created the Commission as the Reserve’s sole governing body. The Commission is responsible for overseeing the general operation and management of the South Slough Reserve, including establishing operating policies and

administrative rules for the operation of the Reserve (O.R.S. 273.554 (a)). The Commission is empowered by statute to appoint a manager and other staff to carry out these responsibilities.

As per state statute, the nine members of the Commission are appointed by the Governor for four-year terms and serve as representatives of specific institutions, agencies, and other stakeholders (see sidebar on page 5-3). The Director of DSL (or a designee) serves as permanent chair of the Commission. The authority of the Commission must be consistent with the policies formulated by the State Land Board as well as state and federal laws.

The Commission may apply for, receive, and expend federal, state, and other funds for Reserve purposes. Commissioners review Reserve activities and proposed initiatives at public meetings held three times a year.

***South Slough Management
Commission Positions:***

1. Education
2. Public
3. Oregon International Port of Coos Bay
4. Director of Department of State Lands (Chair)
5. Office of Coastal Management, NOAA (non-voting)
6. University of Oregon Institute of Marine Biology
7. Oregon State University
8. Coos County Commission
9. Local Sovereign Tribal Nations

Federal and State Laws

The Reserve is managed in accordance with Reserve System Program Regulations (15 C.F.R. Part 921), which govern the administration of Reserve System programs, grants, and funding (see Appendix A). State statutes and administrative rules support the objectives of the Reserve System by establishing policy for the operation and public use of the Reserve (see Appendix B: Oregon Revised Statutes and Appendix C: Oregon Administrative Rules). These regulations and rules are used in combination with stewardship policies to manage and protect the resources and integrity of the Reserve.

Current staff

Adequate staffing is essential to the effective implementation of the Reserve's programs and operations. The Reserve currently meets human resource needs through a combination of 16 permanent full-time staff, along with

part-time positions, contractors, interns, and volunteers (Figures 5.2 and 5.3). Thus, total staff size fluctuates with the addition of temporary employees, students, interns, participants from social service training programs, and others. Extra staffing is supported by federal and private grants, inter-agency cooperative agreements, state operating funds, student scholarships, and donor contributions.

The need for some staff positions is identified by NOAA as a prerequisite for participation in certain programs. Participation in some national initiatives requires a program coordinator. The funding available for these programs generally supports the program and necessary staff. The Reserve must also apply for supplemental funds and agree to conduct the programming within the parameters laid out by NOAA.

New staff positions are identified and developed in a number of ways. With new projects and expanding programs, Reserve staff work with management to include tasks in grant proposals to support limited-duration, part-time, and full-time positions as well as volunteers, contractors, and interns. Positions are established based on responsibilities, work load, budget, and other parameters. NOAA may also recommend additional staffing needs via periodic evaluations.

At times it is possible to submit a policy option package (POP) to the state legislature during a biennium budget request to provide funding for additional permanent full time positions at the Reserve. Such positions were identified (but not approved in the 2017-19 cycle), and will be sought after in future cycles. The highest

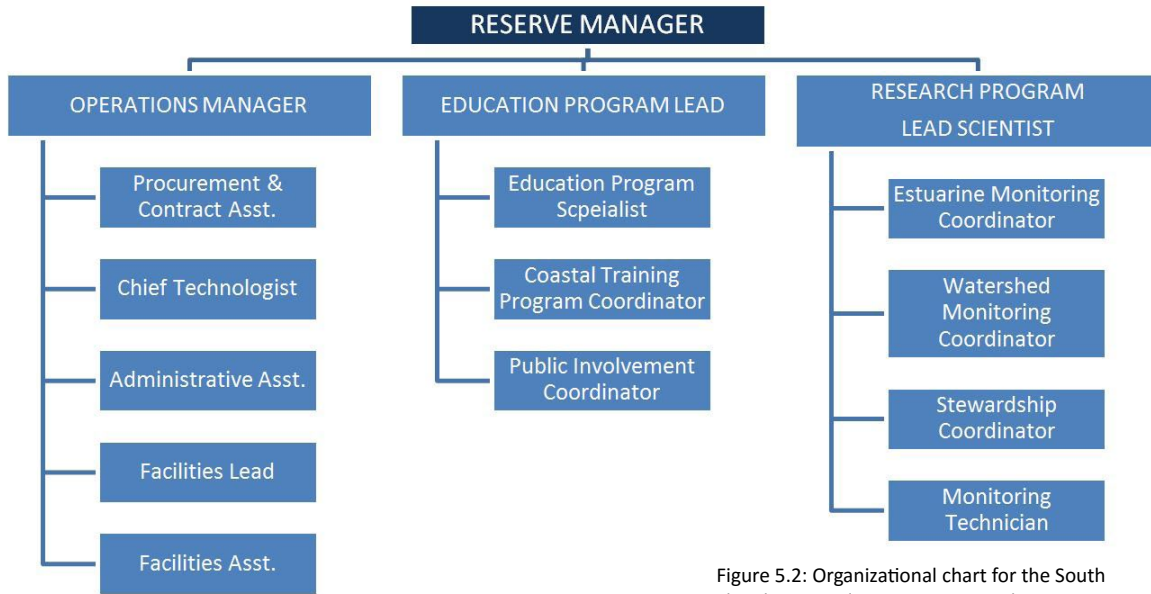


Figure 5.2: Organizational chart for the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve.

Category	Position	Office Location
Full-time Staff	Reserve Manager	Lab-OIMB
	Research Coordinator (Lead)	Lab-OIMB
	Estuarine Monitoring Coordinator	Lab-OIMB
	Watershed Monitoring Coordinator	Lab-OIMB
	Stewardship Coordinator	Lab-OIMB
	Monitoring Technician	Lab-OIMB
	Chief Technologist	Lab-OIMB
	Operations Manager	Interpretive Center
	Education Program Coordinator (Lead)	Interpretive Center
	Education Program Specialist	Interpretive Center
	Coastal Training Program Coordinator	Interpretive Center
	Public Involvement Coordinator	Interpretive Center
	Procurement & Contracts Assistant	Interpretive Center
Administrative Assistant	Interpretive Center	
Facilities Supervisor (Lead)	Maintenance Bldg.	
Facilities Assistant	Maintenance Bldg.	
Part-time Staff	Americorps, temporary employees, etc.	Lab-OIMB and Interpretive Center

Figure 5.3: Location of Reserve staff. OIMB = Oregon Institute of Marine Biology

priority staff needs at this time are a geographic information systems (GIS) specialist to support geospatial data collection, organization, and analyzing, and to create map products for all sectors of the Reserve, and an education assistant to work with education staff to deliver educational and interpretive programs (see Administration Needs, below).

Information Technology

The Information Technology (IT) department's purpose is to maintain current systems and implement new technologies, programs, and upgrades as needed to support Reserve staff. IT staff provide administrative support for all Reserve user profiles, email, and on line work-flow programs. IT staff are essential

to the operations of the Reserve. The Chief Technologist serves as the head of the IT department and primary IT staff person. The Reserve's main facilities (the Visitors' Center and Science Laboratory) host a domain log-on server, storage server, backup servers, along with their entire network infrastructure. The Chief Technologist supports about 30 desktop workstations and five laptops for staff, interns, and volunteers.

The Chief Technologist is responsible for monitoring and maintaining:

- Computers, printers, and the network system support
- The solar project, which includes solar equipment at the Visitors' Center, designed to power the building and generate surplus power for the regional grid
- All interpretive exhibits with computers, monitors, and projectors
- Audio and visual equipment at the Visitors' Center and Science Laboratory
- Specialized weather and earthquake equipment monitoring
- The phone system
- Software installation, licensing, and updates, including GIS platforms for desktops and hand-held field devices
- The wireless communication project, which includes:
 - o The solar powered communications tower located along Joe Ney Slough
 - o Multi-band microwave equipment
 - o A series of line-of-sight communication relay towers (installation in process)

Once the wireless project is complete, the entire Reserve, including the trails and waterways, will have wireless access to the

Internet. Wireless access will provide an immense resource to research and education activities that occur in isolated places, as well as being an important safety measure in remote areas.

Program Funding Support

Basic Reserve operations, including personnel expenses, are supported by a combination of federal funds and state funds. Federal funds come from NOAA through a grant-in-aid agreement for approximately \$1.6 million per biennium. State funds total approximately \$2 million each biennium, for a grand operating total of approximately \$3.6 million per biennium. State funds do not come from Oregon's General Fund, but from the Common School Fund.

Reserve staff routinely apply for other funds in the form of competitive grants (federal or private) to provide support for special projects and activities, and sometimes to supplement basic operating needs. The FOSS also assist with fundraising and administer some grants on behalf of the Reserve.

Partnering Agencies and Organizations

Administration oversees the Reserve's formal and, to an extent, informal partnerships.

Formal partnerships exist with a number of state, federal, and non-profit organizations to guide working relations. Informal partnerships with local groups help expand the capacity and reach of the Reserve's work. Reserve administrative staff recognizes that partnerships enhance the ability of each entity to be more efficient, effective, and productive.

The Reserve actively seeks partnerships in the community, regionally, and nationally to support joint projects and efforts guided by the Reserve’s mission, vision, and strategic plan. Appendix F outlines the list of ongoing formal cooperative agreements. Some key community partnerships are described below.

Friends of South Slough, Inc. (FOSS)

Incorporated in 1989, FOSS is a non-profit organization that supports and assists Reserve activities, and obtains grants to support and expand the Reserve’s programs and infrastructure. The FOSS also provides educational and interpretive services to the Reserve, helping visitors understand the function, flora, fauna, and cultural history of the estuary. The FOSS’ mission is to improve people’s understanding of and relationship to estuaries and coastal watersheds. Any individual or group supporting the mission of FOSS may become a member.

FOSS generates revenue for its operations by managing a gift shop at the Interpretive Center. FOSS also applies for grants on behalf of the Reserve. In the past, fundraising efforts by FOSS generated \$132,500 for renovations to the Interpretive Center and over \$20,000 for the development of new exhibits. In 2008, FOSS received \$11,000 for the development of an aquarium program, which has become a key exhibit at the Visitors’ Center. In 2009, FOSS administered the Reserve’s Upper Watershed Restoration Action Plan. In 2015, FOSS commenced administration of awards for over \$60,000, to support fish research, and \$20,000, to restore a historic cultural site on the Reserve. The FOSS provides significant support

Administrative Objectives for 2017-2022

While the overall goal of administration is to support the strategic priorities, goals, objectives, and actions of the Reserve (see Chapter 3), the following objectives have been developed to articulate how the administration will help support Reserve programs and operations.

Objectives:

1. Maintain public access to the Reserve through facilities and trails, using innovative design and construction methods that minimize ecological impacts.
2. Strengthen the Reserve’s relationships with DSL, NOAA, and regional sovereign tribal nations.
3. Support capacity at the Reserve by sourcing and managing funding sufficient for addressing program objectives.
4. Improve budget oversight and communication at the Reserve.
5. Improve staff development through training and experiences that foster professional growth.
6. Work to ensure the community recognizes the Reserve and understands how it serves the residents and visitors of the Coos Bay area.

to K-12 and adult learning programs and has funded the growth of the internship program at the Reserve. In addition to fund-raising, FOSS members donate their time and talents as volunteers at the Reserve.

State legislation, effective January 2004, enabled DSL to more fully develop its relationship with FOSS. The management of the Reserve already works closely and collaboratively with FOSS. The Reserve Manager and Public Outreach Coordinator attend FOSS board meetings. Currently the FOSS president occupies the public-at-large representative's seat on the Reserve Management Commission.

The Reserve will continue to foster the partnership with FOSS and explore methods to enhance fundraising and resources utilization that serve both entities.

University of Oregon's Institute of Marine Biology (OIMB)

A partnership with the University of Oregon's Institute of Marine Biology (OIMB) facilitates the operations of the Science program at the Reserve. OIMB occupies a 107-acre site in Charleston, at the mouth of the South Slough watershed. All Reserve science staff (research, monitoring, and stewardship) are housed in office and laboratory space on the OIMB campus.

Through the University of Oregon, OIMB conducts research and offers courses in marine biology and related fields. The Reserve maintains a Memorandum of Understanding with OIMB to share administrative resources and laboratory facilities (Appendix E). In the past, the Reserve has collaborated with OIMB in the Reserve System's Graduate Research Fellowship program. The Reserve's Research Coordinator holds a courtesy faculty appointment at OIMB, and serves as an

advisor for graduate students. The Research Coordinator collaborates with other faculty members at the university and at OIMB to conduct and direct research. A representative of OIMB occupies a seat on the Management Commission.

Sovereign Tribal Nations

Since 2006, the Reserve has increased its collaboration with sovereign tribal nations in the Coos Bay area for a number of projects.

The Reserve works with the Confederated Tribes of the Coos, Lower Umpqua, and Siuslaw Indians, as well as staff from the Coquille Indian Tribe, to implement water quality monitoring throughout the Coos estuary. The Reserve also works with both tribes on habitat and cultural restoration projects, cultural resource protection, education and outreach. For example, the tribes have provided assistance with compliance to the National Historic Preservation Act Section 106 review process.

Cultural and natural resource team members also serve on project advisory groups and help shape educational programming when appropriate. A seat on the Reserve's Management Commission is jointly held Oregon's coastal tribal nations. Since 2015, MOUs have been in place with the Coquille Indian Tribe and the Confederated Tribes of Coos, Lower Umpqua and Siuslaw Indians.

Coos Watershed Association

The Coos Watershed Association represents a variety of land management interests in

the local community and is responsible for initiating many innovative practices in effective watershed management. The Reserve is a founding member of the watershed association, and the two groups have coordinated on a number of projects over the years, establishing an excellent working relationship. The watershed association has professional staff and the institutional capacity to solicit and administer grant funds on behalf of the Reserve.

The Reserve Manager has served on Coos Watershed Association Board of Directors since its formation. In 2015, a Memorandum of Understanding formalized the already successful working relationship between the two organizations.

Federal and State Partners

The Reserve renewed its MOU with the Coos Bay office of the Bureau of Land Management in 2015. A new MOU with the Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife was also formalized in 2016. Similar to the MOUs with the Tribes, these agreements facilitate resource sharing, increase program effectiveness, and improve inter-agency communication. See Appendix F for the list of current formal cooperative agreements.

Advisory Committees

While the Reserve no longer maintains a Reserve-wide advisory committee, the practice of the Reserve has always been to develop project specific advisory groups compiled of specialists and community stakeholders. For example, the Winchester Tidelands Restoration Advisory Group was developed to design and implement tideland restoration and monitoring work along the Winchester arm of the South

Administrative Accomplishments since 2006:

- Secured a full-time Chief Technologist position at the Reserve
- Secured a full-time Procurement & Contracts Specialist position
- Reinstated the position of Stewardship Coordinator position
- Research and Education Coordinator positions were upgraded to lead staff positions
- Updated the Reserve's phone system
- Developed and renewed various cooperative agreements with multiple partners
- Established an Internet link to the DSL's network and document management systems
- Adopted Fee Rules/Fee Schedule for Reserve facilities
- Completed an Upland Habitat Restoration Plan (2008)
- Completed an Energy and Climate Plan (2011)
- Completed the NOAA-required CZMA Section 312 Evaluation (2014-2015)
- Disaster Response Plan, completed 2015

Slough. Similarly, the Wasson Creek Watershed Restoration Advisory Committee evolved to target design and monitoring efforts for the upcoming ridge-top to estuary restoration project in the drainage. The Partnership for Coastal Watersheds is another example of a stakeholder driven advisory group, used by the Reserve to inform research and education programming to address community needs.

Administrative Needs

Currently, two additional full-time positions have been identified as high need at the Reserve, when funding support becomes available:

GIS & Data Management: An Information Systems Specialist position, focusing on geographic information systems (GIS) and data management, was identified as a program suggestion in the 2008 NOAA's 312 evaluation and continues to be a priority identified by staff. This position would be responsible for capturing, integrating, storing, manipulating, analyzing, managing, and presenting all types of spatial and geographical data for research, education and restoration programs on a local, regional and national level. Establishing and supporting a GIS position will provide the human resources necessary to implement the priorities at the Reserve (See Chapter 3), including continued support for the Partnership for Coastal Watersheds initiative, a bottom up stakeholder process concerning the management of the Coos Watershed.

Education Program Assistant: An additional education program specialist has also been identified as a high need by staff and management alike. The Reserve receives more education requests than current capacity can accommodate. Consequently, the Reserve is in the process of exploring how to obtain support for this position, in order to achieve strategic priorities.

Chapter 6: Facilities Development and Improvement Plan

Goal of Facilities and Construction Philosophies

The South Slough Reserve is proud of the high quality facilities it provides to visitors and staff. The facilities team at the Reserve does an impeccable job maintaining the grounds and infrastructure and as such, the philosophy of the Reserve can be described as one where safety and consideration are emphasized in building plans and operations.

Facilities have a wide range of purposes. There are science labs that serve as a base for research, monitoring and stewardship in the Reserve. There are administrative offices that oversee the technical aspects of the Reserve, from finance to information technology. There are public facilities that provide educational exhibits and local meeting areas and there are trails that provide visitor and staff access to recreational, research, and educational opportunities. Overall, these facilities exist to serve the Reserve's conservation, scientific, and educational goals.

Along with the State of Oregon, the Reserve is also committed to using sustainable building technologies. As part of a state agency, the Reserve is required to spend 1.5% of future total construction or renovation contract prices on green energy technology (ORS 279C.527 through 279C.528 and Oregon Laws 2013 ch. 612 (HB 3169)).

Utilizing innovative sustainable technologies in new or retrofitting construction is important to the Reserve, which is why solar power technologies have been incorporated into the

Reserve over the last several years. In order to maintain high quality facilities, and a philosophy of considerate and informed facilities management, the Reserve will continue to seek innovative building technologies as opportunities arise.

Facility descriptions

The Reserve comprises several facilities. Buildings include:

Visitors' Center

Built in the mid-1980s, the Visitors' Center (Center) was remodeled in 2002 (Figure 6.1). The Center is the Reserve's primary public building and is located four miles south of Charleston on Seven Devils Road. The Center houses exhibits, a reception area, a gift shop, several Reserve staff offices, a classroom and an auditorium. The Center is the point of departure for most of the Reserve's trails.

The 1,500 square-foot auditorium accommodates up to 70 people for lectures and about 30-40 for workshops. There are 16 work stations for staff.



Figure 6.1: Aerial image of the Reserve's Interpretive Center.

Other resources include a common room, copy room, kitchen, bathroom, utility room, classroom, storage area, deck, and public restrooms.

There have been several advances to improve sustainability in the Center. With energy-efficient lighting throughout the building, as well as 52 solar panels on the auditorium roof, energy is returned to the grid and applied as credit to the power bill (Figure 6.2). A display inside the exhibit hall informs visitors of the total energy savings since installation, the daily savings, and the amount of CO₂ reduced by using green energy. There are also new solar-powered water pumps for the well, and an energy-efficient, wood burning insert installed in the fireplace. Though there are no current plans to improve this building, all future restorations will incorporate sustainability into their plans.



Figure 6.2: Solar panels that are mounted to the roof of the Interpretive Center auditorium.

Exhibits

The majority of the Reserve's exhibits are located in the Center. Live exhibits welcome visitors to the Center with displays of fish, marine invertebrates and amphibians, and

with a mural depicting the Reserve's principal habitat types. The foyer also accommodates an introduction to the Reserve, including history, wildlife, and a map.

Immediately inside the front door is the kid's center. This area includes a table with shells, petrified wood, feathers, and animal hides that children are encouraged to play with, as well as a coloring station.

The structure of the main exhibits mimics the boardwalk of the marsh trail system. The boardwalk winds around the exhibits and periodically features habitat exhibits, with field guides explaining the common species in that area. Habitat types include the tidal mudflats featuring rock weeds, raccoons, and butter clams; freshwater marshes featuring river otters, skunk cabbage, and marsh wrens; and salt marshes featuring long-tailed weasels, tufted hair grass, and salt grass. There is also an earthquake monitor in the exhibit area that highlights past earthquakes and speaks to increasing awareness about future ones that might affect the estuary.

While viewing the exhibits, visitors can hear the sounds of the estuary in the form of running water and frog and bird calls. The following exhibits encompass themes that are central to the Reserve's mission by accentuating the inter-tidal environment, cultural heritage, and current scientific understanding of the Coos estuary and Oregon's dynamic, tectonically active coastal margin:

- *Soak It Up*: This exhibit explains water flow throughout the Reserve, restoration efforts, and some of the aquatic species in the Reserve. It includes an interactive display

to explain water-filtering through sediment, as well as fish specimens that visitors can study under a magnifying glass and a historic lamprey trap.

- *Surviving Salinity*: In this exhibit, visitors can learn about the changes in salinity throughout the Reserve and how plants and animals adapt to the change. It includes casts of different bird skulls, a mounted great blue heron, and Dungeness crab molts under a magnifying glass.



Figure 6.3: Reserve staffers Hannah Schrager and Joy Tally interpret an exhibit for an education program.

- *Life in the Muddy Shallows*: This exhibit describes the mudflat habitats in the Reserve and the animals found there.
- *Ocean Influences*: This exhibit details the many ways that the ocean affects the Reserve. It includes an interactive “estuary soup,” in which visitors can turn a wheel to see different microscopic species within the estuary or can watch a video of zooplankton in the Reserve. The exhibit also explains oceanic weather influences and provides current weather conditions.
- *Written on the Landscape*: In this exhibit, visitors can learn the varied ways that nature can be used to understand history. It includes a sediment sample with explanations for what each layer means as well as a local tree trunk with explanations for what was happening in the area during each set of rings.

- *Of Forests and Flowing Water*: This exhibit explains the importance of uplands and riparian habitats in the Reserve. It includes a bear hide with a description of local black bear populations and a “stand” of old growth trees with a small human figure to give the scale of the size of old growth forests.
- *People of the Estuary*: This exhibit provides a historic background of the people in the South Slough and Coos estuary. It includes a slide show of historic pictures; a twelve minute video titled “Tide of the Heron: The story of South Slough”; a post box with copies of historic letters and articles; and a recording from a citizen of the Slough telling stories from her childhood.
- *The Naturalist’s Desk*: This desk, situated in the corner of the exhibit hall, provides visitors with a hands-on chance to explore the Reserve. In various hidey-holes and drawers are magnifying glasses, shells, bones, feathers, and rocks. A computer monitor plays a slide show to help inform visitors about what they are studying. There are also maps and handouts for visitors to take with local information, such as tsunami hazards.

Exhibits continue into the William Q. Wick Auditorium. In the back of the hall there are hangings informing visitors about tide cycles, eelgrass meadows, and forested habitats. There are also drawers containing various interactive activities, such as comparing sediment types and samples of different wood species. Exhibits extend to include the works of local artists that are periodically displayed in the auditorium.

The deck surrounding the Center has informative panels on the side rails describing

the Reserve's migratory bird populations, trail system, and upland habitats. Attached to the rail is a spotting scope that affords a view of the South Slough. The Reserve also has exhibits beyond the Center. Signs along the trails inform visitors about local plant life and habitats.

Science Laboratory

The Science laboratory (4,000 sq. ft.) was built in 1999. It serves both administrative and research purposes and is housed in a two-story wing of the Terwilliger Building at the southern end of the OIMB campus in Charleston (Figure 6.5). It includes nine offices and 13 work stations, storage servers and backup servers along with a battery backup unit to cope with power interruptions and surges. Additionally, there is a wet/dry laboratory, seawater table room, staging and storage areas, kitchen, a shower, and a garage.

Improvements to sustainability have included expansion and reorganization of the facility to enhance efficiency. Future structural modifications will seek to reduce the building's energy consumption and expand work space (see Facility Upgrades section).



Figure 6.4: The Reserve Science Center building located at the Oregon Institute of Marine Biology in Charleston, Oregon.

Maintenance shop

The maintenance shop (3,888 sq. ft.) was built in 1997 on Seven Devils Road a mile south of the Visitors' Center (Figure 6.5). The shop provides shelter for vehicles and paddle craft, storage, a woodworking shop, and one office with two work stations. A pole barn provides protection from weather for additional equipment. The shop, barn, and yard are protected by a security fence, alarm system, and remotely-operated gate. This building has no public access and no current plans for improvement, though any future plans would consider sustainability. The facility gets network connectivity through a wireless bridge.

Spruce Ranch

Spruce Ranch (1,680 sq. ft.) was purchased in 1997 and remodeled in 2002 to accommodate guests or temporary workers. Its location is adjacent to the maintenance shop (Figure 6.5). Two 24-foot diameter yurts added to the property in 2004 provide additional temporary housing. There is no public access to this facility and no current plans for improvement, though any future plans would consider sustainability.

The house is also connected to the Internet infrastructure via a wireless relay station link, and the entire complex, including the yurts, have wireless coverage for researchers and visiting guests.

Education shed

Built in 1997 at the lower end of the Estuary Study Trail, this shed provides storage for teaching materials. It has minimal public access and no plans for improvement.

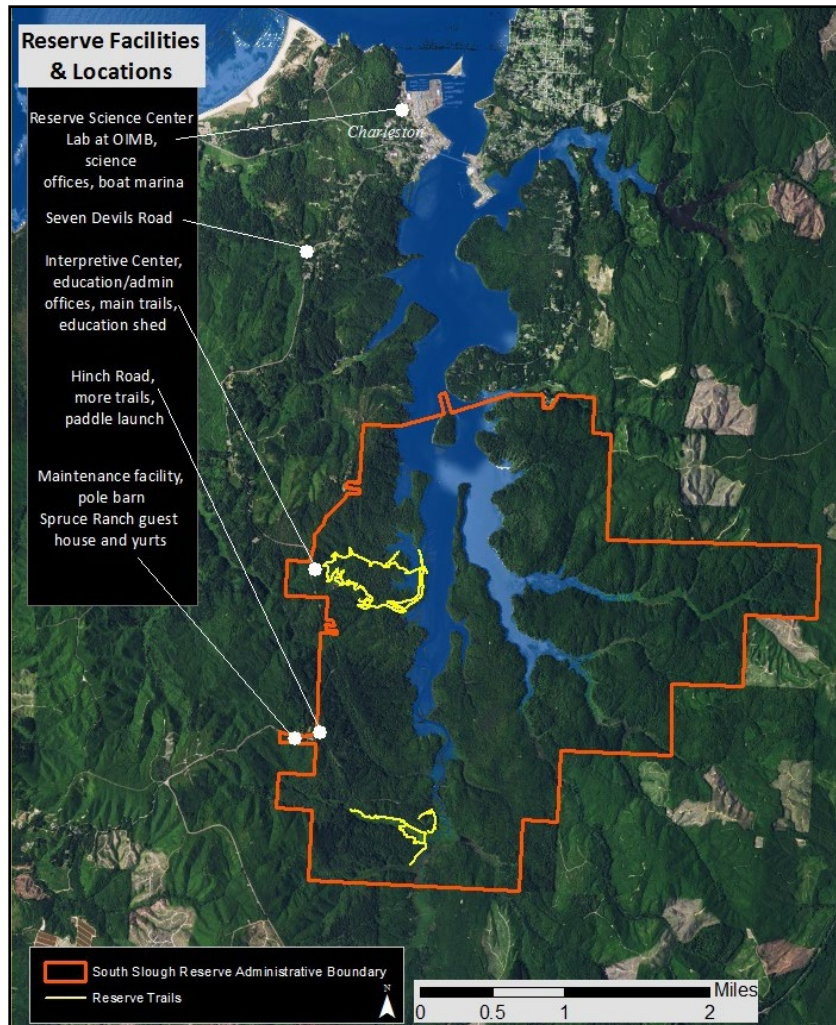


Figure 6.5: Map of Reserve facilities and locations.

Trail restrooms are located at the lower end of the trail system near the education shed. The self-contained composting toilets in these restrooms minimize environmental impacts.

Other facilities

Vessels

- Two boats w/outboard motors and trailers
- One Native American-styled 24 foot, 8-passenger canoe
- Six kayaks

Vehicles

- One tractor
- One 7-passenger van
- Three pickup trucks
- One flatbed truck for maintenance use
- One fuel efficient car for out of town travel

Science stations

- System-wide Monitoring Program (SWMP) water quality stations
- Meteorological stations
- Sentinel Site stations

For a full list of facilities refer to Table 6.1.

Category	Description
Primary Structures	Interpretive Center (IC): offices, restrooms, public exhibits (including aquaria), auditorium, classroom, storage closets, bookstore, copier/library room
	Maintenance shop: office space, restroom, 3-bay garage (tools, vehicle, watercraft storage)
	Spruce Ranch: living area, kitchen, bathrooms, deck, queen bed, bunk beds, heating fuel tank, well pump
	Spruce Ranch yurts (2): Bunk beds, tables, chairs, futon, armoire, heaters
	Office spaces at OIMB: offices for science staff, wet lab, field gear storage, and garage
Support Structures	Pole barn (at maintenance shop): boat, trailer, landscape equipment, and firewood storage
	Hinch Road Paddle Launch: gravel paddle launch for water based programs
	Pump house (at IC): water tank, solar water pumping equipment, office tables/chair storage
	Hidden Creek boardwalk and Overlook infrastructure
	Trail bridges (North Creek, Hidden Creek, 10-Minute Trail, etc.)
	Education storage shed (located at the lower portion of the main trail system)
	Vault toilet (located in the lower part of the main trail system)
	Wireless tower and building at Joe Ney Landfill
Wireless tower at south end of Reserve property off of Seven Devils Rd.	
Utilities	Electric (IC): Pacific Power (888) 221-7070, 52 panel solar system on auditorium roof that feeds back to the grid
	Electric (Maintenance, Spruce Ranch): Coos Curry Electric, (541) 396-3118 or (866) 352-9044
	Internet: Connected to OIMB internet at OIMB; a wireless system connects OIMB to the IC, Maintenance and Spruce Ranch
	Propane: IC and ECOS Ferrellgas, (541) 888-2636
	Phone: Frontier, (800) 921-8104
	Heating Fuel: Carson Oil, (541) 756-3426
Support Equipment	Flatbed 1-ton truck; Chevrolet ½ ton; Ford F-150; Dodge Caravan; Ford Fusion, Ford F-250
	6 Kayaks, 2 boats, 3 trailers, 1 tractor, 2 boat motors, 1 riding lawn mower, maintenance tractor, weed eaters, chain saws, misc. garden/lawn tools, 1 Solar Panel boat Battery
	Communications: cell phones (4), Motorola base radios (2), hand held radios (3), walkie-talkie, NOAA midland radio, ONSET USB base station (Water Logger), SATLINK2 Remote Satellite
	Other: 2 Pumps, 1 Portable Water Pump, 6 Solar Panels – in field (SWMP), 6 SATLINK2 Remote Satellites – in field (SWMP), Solar powered generator (IC), emergency battery
Long Term / Permanent Monitoring Stations	NOAA climate Reference Network weather station (2 structures) on steel tower and concrete posts/wood fence (Frederickson Marsh)
	SWMP real-time weather station on 30 ft. steel tower (Tom's Creek marsh)
Monitoring Stations	SWMP real-time water quality station on: wood piling dock (Charleston Bridge), wood piling (Valino Island), steel tripod towers (Elliot Creek, Winchester Creek)
	SWMP secondary water quality station on: steel piles (Catching Slough, Coos River), wood/concrete piling (Isthmus Slough), wood dolphin McCullough Bridge (North Point)

Table 6.1: Detailed list of Reserve facilities, including structures, utilities, support equipment and permanent monitoring stations.

Building	Age (years)	Years since last remodel
IC	~30	13
Science Lab	25	15
Maintenance Shop	18	N/A
Spruce Ranch	18	13
Education Shed	18	N/A

Table 6.2: Age of major Reserve facilities, including remodel information if applicable.

Facility challenges

None of the Reserve’s buildings are less than 10 years old (see Table 6.2). Though age can cause stress to some buildings, regular updates to the main buildings have prevented it from being a debilitating problem. The systems within the buildings (such as the new pump system in the Center) are also up-to-date and sustainable.

To mitigate the Reserve’s climate impact, staff have reduced the Reserve’s carbon footprint through changes in facilities, including installation of photovoltaic panels on the roof of the Center and pump house; replacing incandescent lighting with high intensity light-emitting diode lamps and directed fixtures; installing a fireplace insert and on-demand low-energy water heaters at the Center; using solar panels to power science stations; and making other improvements to save energy. Similar improvements for the science laboratory have been included in the plans for the lab expansion.

Both natural and anthropogenic stressors affect Reserve facilities (see sidebar). Future stressors revolve around climate change. Sea level rise

Natural and anthropogenic stressors that affect facilities:

Natural:

- Heavy rain, humidity and cool temperatures; general coastal weather patterns
- Ground settling, causing some building separation from the main structure (e.g., Interpretive Center offices)
- General wear on the trail systems, such as erosion, boardwalk deterioration and damage from wildlife, vegetation overgrowth, and winter storm damage

Anthropogenic:

- Littering within the Reserve
- Vandalism
- Theft of property and forest products

would flood some of the trails in the system. An increase in winter storm intensity would increase wear on both trails and buildings, and may cause an increase in flooding or facility damage. Though the Reserve has currently planned for these changes, they still have the potential to cause damage to the facilities.

Planning for facilities

When new facilities are needed they will be planned and constructed to comply with the Americans with Disabilities Act. New construction will be planned so as to have minimal visual impact and not obstruct views, either within or beyond the Reserve’s boundary. Building exteriors will be finished using rough-textured, natural or natural-appearing materials with neutral, natural colors. Where practical, preference may be given to artificial, sustainably produced

building materials that mimic natural materials. To the greatest extent possible, new buildings will be designed and located to support multiple Reserve goals. In locating buildings, the Reserve will consider the potential impact of increased human activity on natural areas and resources. Construction methods will be chosen to have minimal environmental impact, with particular attention paid to reducing the impacts of runoff, pollution, and soil compaction.

Where applicable, construction will occur in the dry season to minimize ground compaction and sediment loading of water bodies. Runoff from roads and parking lots will be directed whenever possible through vegetative filters prior to entering any water body. Non-motorized conveyances will be used whenever feasible to transport construction materials to and from sensitive sites.

In planning, locating, and constructing new facilities, and when upgrading existing facilities, the Reserve will plan for energy efficiency, reduced production of carbon dioxide, and the use of sustainably produced and designed building materials. All construction will be consistent with the Reserve's stewardship policies and Oregon's statewide land use planning goals.

Only native plants already found within the Reserve will be used as decorative plantings around buildings and facilities.

Trail development is guided by the 1990 Watershed Walkway Plan, although this plan is in need of an update. Public trails are planned to avoid crossing tidally-influenced areas

and wetlands as much as possible. They are designed to discourage shortcuts or off-trail excursions, and are predominantly earthen but may be surfaced with wood chips or gravel for safety or to minimize erosion. In areas where boardwalks can become slippery, the planks have been surfaced with wire mesh to provide traction. As trails are updated and added, accessibility in emergencies will be addressed.

The Reserve maintains roads and parking to provide public access and facilitate the Reserve's programs and operations. All of the Reserve's roads are legacies of the age of logging. Many have been modified to improve drainage and reduce erosion. Roads and parking areas are associated with compacted soils, storm water runoff, and erosion, and may disrupt animal habitat and visitors' trail experiences. Vehicles are allowed only on the Entrance Road, Winchester Road, and Hinch Lane.

The Reserve's policy is to construct and maintain roads and trails only to the extent necessary to do work. If needed, temporary roads may be constructed to provide access for work crews. Staff do not maintain the many miles of abandoned logging roads that remain within the Reserve's boundaries. These roads—despite being covered by forest duff and grown over by small trees—remain usable. Some are likely to be re-activated as the Reserve begins to implement habitat restoration in the upper watershed.

Facility Upgrades

The primary facility upgrade that the Reserve is currently planning is for its Science Lab. The Reserve will upgrade both the laboratory and

offices to improve the working environment.

The Science Lab facility is currently operating at capacity. All work stations are occupied and the laboratory space is fully utilized to support multiple research and monitoring projects as well as field-based projects led by visiting researchers.

In 2011 a NOAA construction grant provided funds to:

1. Complete interior renovations to office space on the first floor where the Lead Scientist and Estuarine Coordinator currently have their offices.
2. Contract with an architect for the design and plans of the expansion of Science Lab as well as the reorientation of the garage.
3. Complete architectural drawings and plans for the new additions (completed March 14, 2014). Cost estimates for the remodel were completed May 1, 2015, which

Current Facility Needs

- Install vault toilet(s) at the Wasson trailhead and/or the paddle launch
- Improve the observation platform deck and upper overlook
- Address the safety issues surrounding the Fredrickson House; a cultural landmark within the Reserve that has not been up kept. The walls and the foundation are starting to crumble and pose a safety risk to the public.
- Restore the Fredrickson Shed; a 2016 Coquille Tribal Community funded project that involves the restoration of a culturally and historically significant structure located on the South Slough Reserve. This project is currently underway.
- Update the Reserve's Facilities Master Plan, which has not been updated since 1991.
- Maintain and improve Spruce Ranch facilities to keep housing available to visiting researchers and interns.
- Complete the wireless communication project: part of this project that been completed but will need additional Multiband microwave equipment and an additional series of line-of-sight relay towers. This will complete the installation of five new wireless relays for internet connectivity through the entire estuary.
- Update and improve interpretive and directional signage on the trail system.
- Update and/or replace watercraft and motor vehicles as needed; research boats are used almost daily and updates will need to be completed to keep staff safe. The fleet of kayaks is also aging; most are at least 15 years old. New and improved kayaks are lighter and come with up-to-date safety features. The Reserve's motor pool, in particular the Dodge Caravan, is in need of constant service and may need replaced soon.
- Utility Terrain Vehicle for maintenance and emergency access to trail systems: it has become increasingly necessary to look at accessibility for emergency needs on the trail system. With the multiple miles of trails, maintenance accessibility is also a problem. The use of a Utility Terrain Vehicle will allow evacuation of hikers with injuries and could lesson injuries to all staff by transporting heavy or awkward equipment.

allowed the Reserve to apply for a construction grant from NOAA in the Fall and Winter of 2015/2016.

The new renovations will entail the following:

- Renovation to enlarge and re-orient an existing garage on the southeast portion of the Science Lab.
- A parking area that will allow for vehicle access on the Seafoam Lane property.
- Reroute a drainage ditch on the Seafoam Lane property.
- Build out additional wet lab space adjacent to seawater tanks.
- The second floor will be built out above the garage and where the current deck and stairs are, adding approximately 1100 square feet of additional office space on the second floor.

The Reserve will also be installing five new wireless relays for Internet connectivity through the entire estuary.

Though other construction is not currently planned, some building projects may develop in the future. As time and budget allows, staff will remove or arrest decay on deteriorating or unsafe structures within Reserve-managed lands. Planning has not yet begun for these projects; depending on the need, the Reserve may seek funds from NOAA for demolition, construction, and clean up. The Reserve needs to update its facilities master plan, which has not been updated since 1991 (see *Current Facility Needs* sidebar).

All facility upgrades will comply with the same philosophies mentioned in the Planning for Facilities section above.

Facilities Accomplishments since 2006

- Energy efficiency upgrades to Reserve buildings (see Interpretive Center above)
- Replacement of Interpretive Center Roof
- An update of trail signs to include interpretive kiosks
- Addition of a new wireless tower
- Installed a second bathroom added to Spruce Ranch to accommodate larger groups.
- Updated the boardwalk on the Hidden Creek trail system
- Exhibit redesigns and installation in Center (see exhibits section under Visitors' Center, above). Portions of the exhibits are electronic and can be updated easily.
- Building leveling, summer 2015, at the Visitors' Center, where settling ground compromised the building's foundation. The Reserve contracted a building lift and stabilization to repair the foundation
- Developed a paddle launch at Hinch Road Bridge and a water trail within the Reserve. This project included several organizations including the Port of Coos Bay, Coos County Parks and local merchants.
- Completed the North Creek Trail. The North Creek trail is a 1.5 mile trail (longest in Reserve) and one of the largest accomplishments during the last 10 years. Completion included several organizations and groups including inmate crews, volunteers from AmeriCorps, Oregon Youth Conservation Corp, and the Belloni Boys Ranch. The upland trail route was completed in early 2008 with staff directing the work of these work crews as well as adjusting the trail plan as necessary

to conform to the terrain and optimize interpretive opportunities.

- Upon completing the upland portion of the trail route, the Reserve contracted an experienced engineer familiar with trail design and construction to design and engineer a bridge to link the lower portion of the North Creek trail with existing portions of the Estuary Study trail system. The final bridge design was a 70 foot aluminum box girder foot bridge with cedar log abutments, wood decking and safety netting. The bridge was constructed by a local contractor, transported by truck to a trailhead on the Reserve then moved by small excavator down the Railroad Trail where it was placed over the estuary to its final resting location.

Chapter 7: Resource Protection Plan

All programs at the Reserve are dedicated to protecting the Reserve's function as an area to be used for coastal ecosystem research and education. The Reserve operates with input from a variety of partners to maintain ecological integrity and to foster better informed management of Pacific Northwest estuaries and coastal watersheds. The legal framework in place to protect Reserve lands, waters, and resources includes the following federal, state, and local regulatory authorities:

Management Authorities

Federal:

- Section 315 of the U.S. Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972, as amended (16 U.S.C., § 1461): Section 316 provides for the establishment of a National Estuarine Research Reserve System and the basis for identifying suitable lands and waters for designating National Estuarine Research Reserves. It also provides for financial assistance to support reserves and evaluation and reporting requirements.
- National Estuarine Research Reserve System Regulations (15 C.F.R. Part 921): The NERRS Regulations specifies, among other things, the mission of the NERR Program, the site selection and management plan development process, designation requirements, ongoing oversight and performance evaluation, and financial assistance provisions. The mission of the Reserve Program is to establish and manage a place-based system of estuarine research reserves "for long-term research, education, and interpretation."

- Federal Grant in Aid No. 04-4-158-12001, as amended: This is the original 1974 grant that created the partnership between NOAA and the state agencies (in Oregon, the Department of State Lands), and provided funds for the initial purchase of lands for National Estuarine Research Reserves. Oregon State agreed to acquire the specified lands to create the Reserve, and enact state statutes to keep the ecosystems on those lands intact.

State:

- Oregon Revised Statutes and Administrative Rules:
 - o Oregon Revised Statutes, Section 273.533 et seq. These statutes establish the management policy for the Reserve, which is to "maintain the integrity of the estuary; protect the estuary from uses and activities, both within and beyond boundaries that may alter or affect the ecosystem and its natural dynamic properties, and preserve the area for long-term scientific and educational uses," (Appendix B). These statutes also establish the Reserve's Management Commission (Commission).
 - o Oregon Administrative Rules, Chapter 142. These state rules specify allowable and non-allowable public uses of the Reserve and its resources. These rules are designed to complement the primary management objectives and the primary scientific objectives of the Reserve by regulating use, in keeping with Oregon's management policy (O.R.S. 273.533) (Appendix C).

- Statewide Land Use Planning Goals; Goal 16—Estuarine Resources: Oregon’s statewide land use planning law (O.R.S. 197) authorized the state’s Land Conservation and Development Commission to adopt 19 goals containing procedures and guidelines to direct local governments in preparing comprehensive land use plans. Planning Goal 16, for estuarine resources, provides specific plans to coastal counties for conserving the ecological values of estuaries.
- Oregon Coastal Management Program: To be approved, the Reserve management plan must comply with the Oregon Coastal Management Program’s rules, regulations, and relevant enforceable policies for protecting estuarine resources. For the Reserve, this includes consistency with the Coos Bay Estuary Management Plan.

Local:

- Coos Bay Estuary Management Plan: This plan is an element of the Coos County Comprehensive Plan. When the Coos Bay Estuary Management Plan was first approved in 1974, the Coos County Commission established de facto protection from development for what was then known as the South Slough Sanctuary, as a special natural area of the Coos estuary. The Commission withdrew the area of the Reserve from the plan and declared it would be managed by the State in accordance with state and federal laws. In regards to the Reserve, the plan states: *“As this is an area set aside for its natural values and for research, it is ideally suited for mitigation or restoration actions. ... The knowledge gained from a restoration/enhancement and monitoring*

program, together with the advantage of State ownership of most of the sites ... could greatly facilitate development elsewhere in the bay, particularly in the Charleston area. Though several of the actions are small and may have relatively minor effects, the cumulative effect on the system is likely to be substantial. Therefore, these sites are accorded a higher priority than they would otherwise have.” (Coos County, 1986).

- South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve Management Plan: The management plan details additional guidelines, policies, and actions deemed necessary by the Reserve manager to protect the natural, cultural, institutional, and other resources of the Reserve.
- Additional sources: Other laws, such as those intended to protect historic, archaeological, or cultural resources or Native American sites, provide additional protection for Reserve resources. Furthermore, the Reserve manager, with the Commission’s direction, may approve additional stewardship policies and actions as appropriate.

Partnerships for Maintaining Regulations

Partnerships between the State of Oregon, NOAA, the Reserve Management Commission, Reserve staff, Coos County, and other natural resource management organizations, maintain the regulations that protect the Reserve. Day to day oversight is provided by Reserve staff, while the creation and shaping of laws and rules is informed by Reserve staff, but overseen by the Commission, the State of Oregon, and the federal government. Law enforcement is provided by the Coos County sheriff and local regulatory

organizations, such as the Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife, while compliance with rules is generally overseen by Reserve staff.

Allowable and Unallowable Uses

The above mentioned management authorities guide the allowable and unallowable uses of the Reserve. Federal law (15 C.F.R. § 921.1) asserts that the Reserve shall be open to the public to the extent allowed by state and federal law, and it states that the multiple uses of the

Reserve must be compatible with the Reserve’s primary purpose: to serve research, educational, and stewardship needs. Oregon state statutes and administrative rules were created in alignment with the primary uses of the Reserve, and in alignment with the mission to improve the understanding and stewardship of Pacific Northwest estuaries and coastal watersheds (Table 7.1). With that said, the pressures on and needs of the Reserve are ever evolving, so stewardship policies and administrative rules need revisiting from time to time.

Activity	Designation
Aesthetic appreciation	Allowed
Canoeing and paddle-craft	Allowed
Chemical fertilizer, herbicide, or pesticide	Restricted – permission required (Management Commission)
Commercial bait gathering	Prohibited
Commercial forest product gathering (greenery, bark, mushrooms)	Prohibited
Commercial mineral removal	Prohibited
Commercial timber harvest	Prohibited
Digging for artifacts	Restricted – permission required (Management Commission)
Dredging, filling, or altering	Restricted – permission required (Management Commission)
Firewood cutting	Restricted – permission required (Manager)
Hiking	Allowed
Horseback riding	Restricted – no current designated areas
Hunting	Restricted to certain areas - Oregon regulations apply
Hunting and observation blinds	Restricted - must be removed by sundown
Introduction of non-native species	Restricted – permission required (Management Commission)
Motorized boating	Restricted – wake must remain below one foot
Motorized/off-road vehicles, biking	Prohibited, except on county roads or with Manager’s permission
Open fires	Restricted – permission required (Manager)
Overnight camping or use	Restricted – permission required (Manager)
Oyster cultivation	Restricted – permission required (Management Commission)
Pets	Allowed, on leash and under direct control of the owner
Picking forest greenery	Restricted – permission required (Manager)
Picnicking	Allowed, except where prohibited by signage
Recreational bait gathering	Allowed, except where prohibited by signage - Oregon regulations apply
Recreational berry picking	Allowed, except where prohibited by signage
Recreational clamming	Allowed, except where prohibited by signage - Oregon regulations apply
Recreational fishing	Allowed, Oregon fishing regulations apply
Recreational mineral gathering	Restricted – permission required (Manager)
Recreational mushroom gathering	Allowed, up to one gallon per person per day
Research & research/education	Restricted – permission required (Manager)
Road construction	Restricted – permission required (Management Commission)
Target/pleasure shooting	Prohibited
Trapping	Restricted – permission required (Manager)
Tree removal	Restricted – permission required (Management Commission)
Wildlife observation	Allowed

Table 7.1: A breakdown of activities that are permissible and prohibited as outlined in the Oregon Administrative Rules relating to the Reserve. Data: http://arcweb.sos.state.or.us/pages/rules/oars_100/oar_142/142_010.html

Restricted Activities Rationale & Pre-Reserve Uses

While the Reserve is open to the public, certain activities must be limited or restricted to maintain the mission and purpose of the Reserve. For example, the removal of natural resources (including minerals, forest products, and wildlife) is either entirely limited or limited by volume, to reduce the human impact on natural processes and the research and educational programming that is based thereon. The commercial extraction of natural resources is prohibited entirely since it does not align with the goals or objectives of the Reserve. One poten-

tial exception to this limitation is the removal of natural resources for the purposes of ecological restoration, in which case commercial revenue is not generated but directly invested back into the mission-driven project and programming itself.

Other uses that are restricted due to their potential adverse impacts on ecological processes, human safety, research, or education programming include off-road vehicle use, target and pleasure shooting, horseback riding, and hunting in certain areas of the Reserve (Figure 7.1). In addition to potential adverse impacts from these activities on programs,

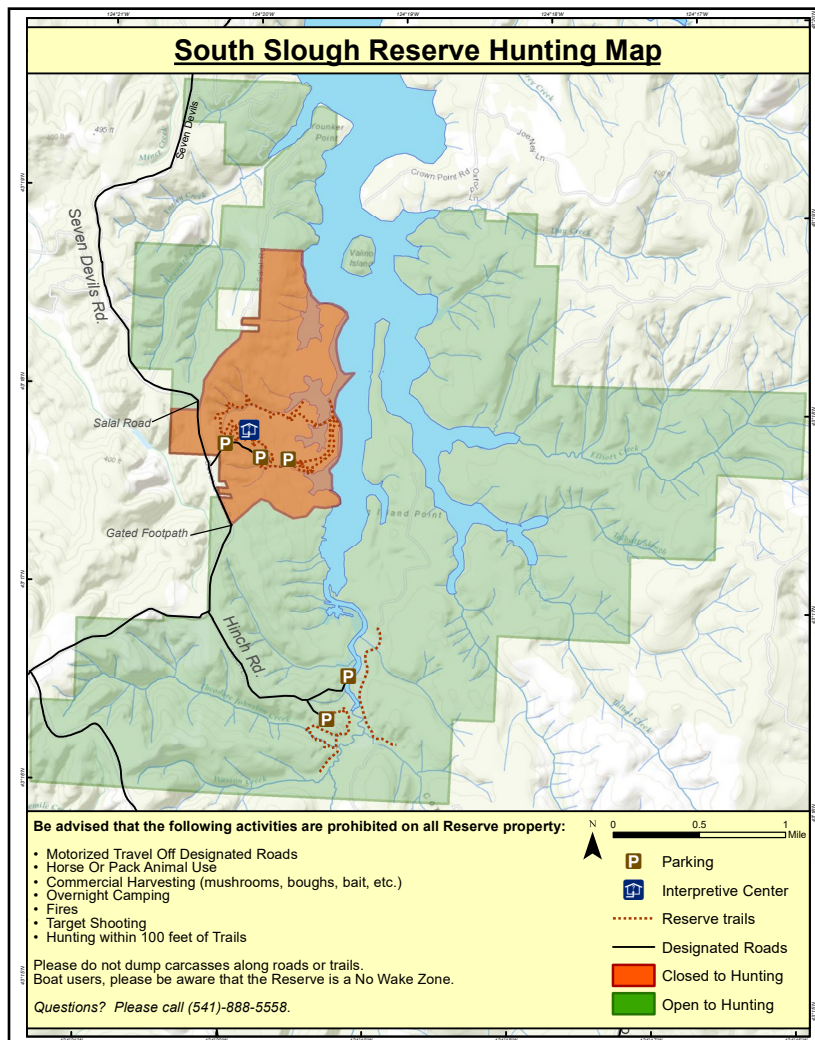


Figure 7.1: Hunting map, showing locations where hunting is allowed, prohibited, or restricted.

processes, and visitor safety, the Reserve often lacks the resources and staff to manage these restricted activities. For example, permitting camping requires staff and resources to manage waste, visitor safety, and infrastructure. Similarly, the permission of firewood collection and trapping require safety measures and monitoring that the Reserve is not equipped to provide.

The manager is authorized to take additional actions to protect public health, safety, and welfare, consistent with the primary objectives of the Reserve. Any activity may be suspended or any area closed if necessary for the conduct of appropriate scientific research, stewardship and education. Furthermore, if research suggests that certain uses have a detrimental impact on the ecosystem or resources thereof, or if these uses may have an adverse impact in the future, appropriate agencies of the State of Oregon shall take immediate action to control these uses so as to remove or negate their effects and restore the system to its prior natural state.

Oyster farming

Commercial oyster cultivation has occurred in the South Slough since before the creation of the Reserve. Although new oyster leases have not been permitted, the pre-existing uses continue (Figure 7.2). Oyster cultivation is a private commercial activity, and the number of oysters and their value is not publicly-shared information. Previously, the Commission has fielded requests by commercial oyster growers operating in the South Slough to grow additional species, such as non-native Manila clams. The Commission has denied these requests in order to provide maximum protection to native spe-

cies and resources, while grandfathered oyster cultivation practices persist.

Surveillance and enforcement

Partnerships between the Reserve and local law enforcement are fundamental to the protection of the Reserve. However, due to the remote location of the Reserve and its facilities, surveillance and enforcement can be problematic. Furthermore, Coos county law enforcement organizations are frequently underfunded and spread very thin, so regular patrol of the Reserve is challenging.

Reserve grounds are occasionally patrolled by the Coos County Sheriff's department, a partnership the Reserve is actively trying to mature. Fire protection in the Reserve vicinity is provided by the Charleston Fire Department and the Coos Forest Protective Association. Hunting and fishing regulations are enforced by Oregon State Police and protection within waterways is provided by the U.S. Coast Guard, stationed in downtown Charleston.



Figure 7.2 Commercial oysters inside the Reserve, adjacent to Long Island Point.



Figure 7.3: Hinch Bridge, located in the relatively remote southern end of the Reserve, is a hot-spot for vandalism. This is in part due to its accessibility.

Ultimately, Reserve staff monitor roads, trails and waterways daily for signs of illegal, prohibited, or restricted activities, and contact law enforcement to report vandalism or other violations. At the science laboratory and the interpretive center, 24-hour video cameras have been installed to provide additional security for publicly owned vehicles, boats, trailers, and other equipment routinely parked outdoors where it may be subject to vandalism and theft.

Resource protection challenges

Water Pollution

The South Slough estuary receives a variety of direct point source pollutant discharges, ranging from those generated by waterside businesses in Charleston (i.e. fish processing plants) to effluent from municipal water treatment outfalls. Non-point source pollutants enter the estuary indirectly as components of road runoff

and runoff from rural and urban activities, as well as occasional actions by private individuals along the shoreline or aboard boats. The Reserve is focusing efforts on developing a better understanding of the sources and movements of nutrients and bacteria in estuarine waters. Through the Partnership for Coastal Watersheds, the science staff is working with universities to develop a hydrodynamic model. The Reserve will continue to work with community organizations, such as water boards, to address water pollution in the South Slough and Coos Estuary.

Vandalism

Vandalism is a chronic problem in remote locations of the Reserve (Figure 7.3). Hot spots for vandalism are those areas that can be reached relatively easily, by road or foot, but do not have a constant staff presence. The Frederickson homestead, Hinch bridge, and Reserve restrooms often experience tagging or other damage. Signage around the Reserve is sometimes the target of pleasure shooting and dumping occurs in areas adjacent to roadways. Reserve staff works with the Coos County Sheriff to deal with illegal activities. In 2015, the Reserve also installed new signage that will hopefully help communicate regulations in high use and problem areas (Figure 7.4).

Harvesting Forest Products

Brush picking, bark gathering, and mushroom collecting for commercial purposes is prohibited in the Reserve. However, each of these practices are chronic occurrences. Commercial endeavors do not align to the primary objectives of the Reserve and the commercial gathering of forest greenery can be downright harmful to Reserve ecological systems. When people illegally collect



Figure 7.4: Example of signs used to communicate uses that are allowed or prohibited within the Reserve.

Port Orford cedar boughs or salal brush, both valuable floral commodities, the foot traffic has the potential to exacerbate the spread of Port Orford cedar root rot (*Phytophthora lateralis*). The stripping of young plants may also damage the survival and resiliency of the vegetation. While the Reserve does allow limited harvesting of forest greenery for noncommercial purposes, these activities are individually approved by the Reserve manager and are mostly for cultural or interpretive reasons. Staff work with the Coos County Sheriff and the local tribes to monitor forest product harvesting in Reserve managed lands.

Timber Harvest on Adjacent Lands

Most of the lands surrounding the Reserve are used for commercial timber harvest. Practices on these lands expose the Reserve to some resource protection challenges, including increased wildfire risk, pollution from chemical treatments, increased sedimentation, and

habitat fragmentation. The Reserve does not manage the practices on these adjacent lands, but staff subscribe to a broad area surrounding the Reserve for all Notifications of Operation regarding timber related activities. Notifications come through the Oregon Department of Forestry and are reviewed by Reserve staff. The Reserve works with Coos County Forestry, the Oregon Department of Forestry, and other stakeholders to mitigate potential conflicts with diverse resource management.



Figure 7.5: Picture of a yarder harvesting timber. Industrial timber harvest is the most common type of land use surrounding the Reserve.

Off-Highway Vehicles

Off-highway vehicle (OHV) use mostly occurs on the east side of the Reserve and is likely due to unclear boundary markings. Preventing OHV use in the remote reaches of the Reserve is challenging due to limited accessibility and limited resources for enforcement. OHV use increases wildlife risk in the Reserve, may cause habitat destruction (including noise disturbance), and may lead to increased litter and dumping in the Reserve. The Reserve is not able to oversee responsible OHV trail creation or use and OHV activities do not meet the primary obligations of the Reserve.

Wildfire

Due to the historically unmanaged nature of Reserve uplands, many forest stands remain overcrowded and pose a catastrophic wildfire risk. The threat of wildfire may be increased by surrounding land management practices or when visitors have illegal campfires and/or access areas via OHV. The Reserve works with local law enforcement to minimize illegal fires and wildfire risk activities in the Reserve. The Reserve also relies on the Coos Forest Protective Association and the Charleston Fire Department to enforce fire restrictions when appropriate.

Disaster Prevention and Response

Unexpected natural or human-caused disasters in any part of the Coos estuary can affect or threaten habitat throughout the ecosystem. The most potentially devastating disasters include oil or chemical spills, and accidents involving hazardous materials shipped to or from the Oregon International Port of Coos Bay. Strong tidal currents render South Slough particularly vulnerable to any water-borne spills during flood tide. The Reserve has participated in the development of spill prevention and contingency response plans by the Coos estuary subcommittee of Oregon Coast Oil Spill and Marine Safety Committee. Spill prevention planning addresses fuel hauling and handling practices; vessel routes, control, and communication procedures; tugboat equipment standards; and recreational boat licensing. The Reserve also completed their Disaster Response and Resiliency plan in early 2015, which addresses response to these threats (see References for the link to the plan).

Reserve Strategic Plan: Goals & Objectives Related to Resource Protection

Each of the goals, objectives, and actions in the 2017-2022 Reserve strategic plan are guided by or in response to resource protection in the Reserve and in the biogeographic region. The goals, objectives, and actions under all three of the priority issues (climate change, habitat protection, and invasive species) relate to resource protection. See Chapter 3 for the full 2017-2022 Reserve Strategic Plan.

References:

Coos County. (1986). Coos Bay Estuary Management Plan. Coquille, OR.

South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve. Oregon Department of State Lands. (2015). Disaster Response Plan. http://www.oregon.gov/dsl/SS/Documents/SSNERR_DRP_FINAL2015.pdf

Chapter 8: Public Uses

The Reserve encourages a diverse range of activities within its boundaries; however, these activities must be responsibly managed and regulated in order to provide adequate long-term protection of the Reserve's natural resources and primary obligations. Subsequently, the Reserve facilitates public access, but public use and recreation are second to the science, education, and protection obligations of the Reserve.

A set of Oregon Revised Statutes (ORS) (Appendix B) and Oregon Administrative Rules (OAR) (Appendix C) guide public use of the Reserve. ORS 273.553 (3) states that "...The Reserve is open to the public. However, to protect the estuarine ecosystems, public use of the Reserve may be limited and controlled by the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve Management Commission in consultation with any technical management team established." In order to more clearly identify responsible public use of the Reserve, OARs govern activities.

The purpose of the OARs that govern the Reserve is explained in Division 10 of OAR 142-010-0005, "The primary management objective of the Reserve is to maintain the integrity of the estuary; to protect it from both internal and external sources of stress which may alter or affect the nature of the ecosystem and to preserve the area for long-term scientific and educational uses. All publicly owned areas of the Reserve are available to scientists, students and the general public on a basis desirable and permissible for coordinated research and educational uses and for other compatible uses

to the extent they do not interfere with the primary management and scientific objectives."

Current Public Access & Trails

The public can access the Reserve at the interpretive center (61907 Seven Devils Road, Charleston Oregon) (Figure 8.1). From the interpretive center itself, or from nearby Hinch Lane, visitors can access a variety of trails. Trails are open daily, from sunrise to sundown, and are for hiking only. Trail surfaces are predominantly earthen, with wood chips, gravel, or boardwalks used where necessary for safe travel. Several trails are fully accessible to people with disabilities. Water access is provided at the paddle launch along Hinch Lane, or in downtown Charleston near the distant water fleet. The interpretive center and trail system are free of charge, although donations to the Friends of South Slough are accepted. Currently, the interpretive center is open from 10am to 4pm, Tuesday through Saturday.

Reserve trails:

Trails were designed to provide a whole-watershed experience. For example, Hidden Creek Trail, in its descent from the interpretive center to the estuary, traces the theme of ridgetop-to-estuary connectivity as it follows the creek from its trickling source to its tidal confluence with the slough. Other trails speak of the Reserve's history of logging, railroad-building, and settlement-era lifestyles. Some trails were built along remnant roads carved in the hills for logging railroads and motorized equipment.

The current policy of the Reserve is to protect and maintain trails, bridges, walkways and decks in their present condition. There are no plans to develop new trails, but the Reserve will be opportunistic in its strategy to improve or enhance the visitor experience that trails provide. Trails are open from sunrise to sundown and are for hiking only. Several trails are fully accessible to people with disabilities.

Trails accessed from Interpretive Center
(Figure 8.2)

Ten-Minute Trail: (0.15 mi.) Adjacent to the interpretive center and accessible to people with disabilities. This trail provides access to North, Middle and Hidden Creek trails.

Middle Creek Trail: (0.47 mi.) Departs from the Ten-Minute Trail and descends through forested switchbacks to connect with the Hidden Creek Trail.

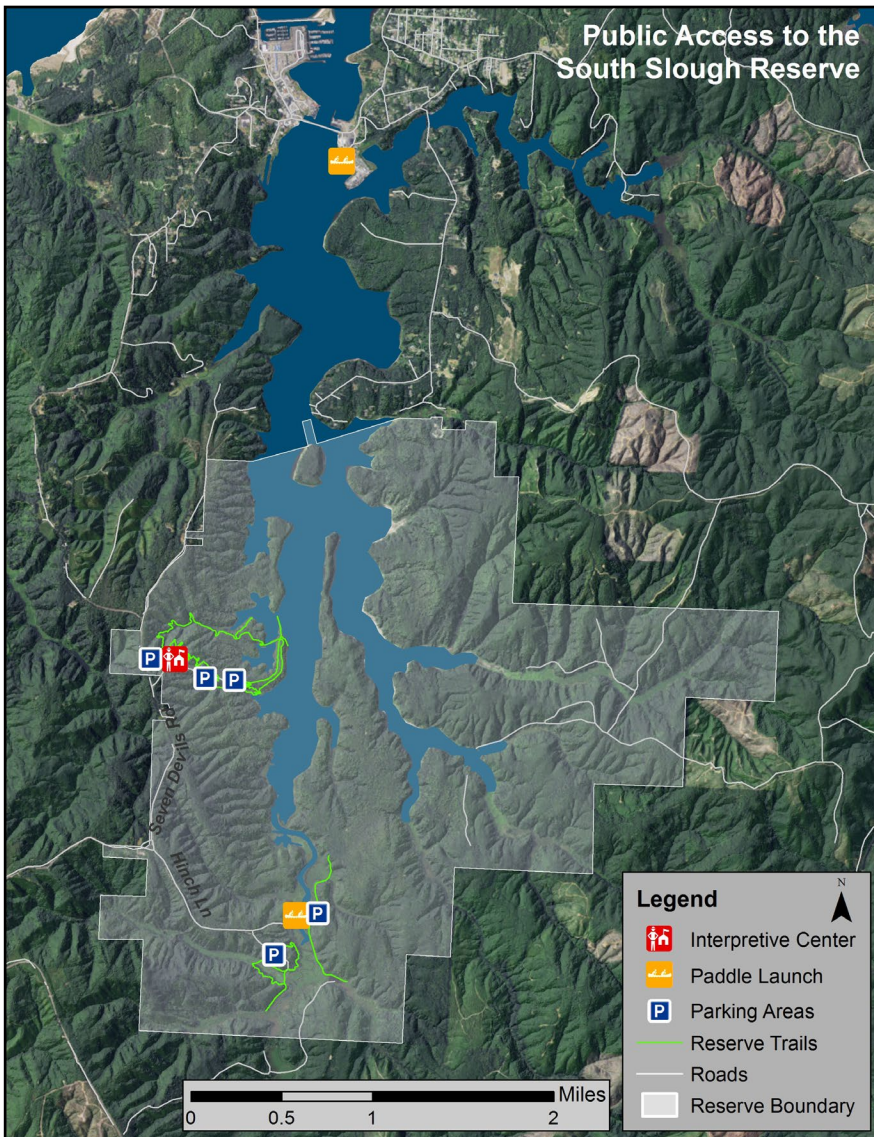
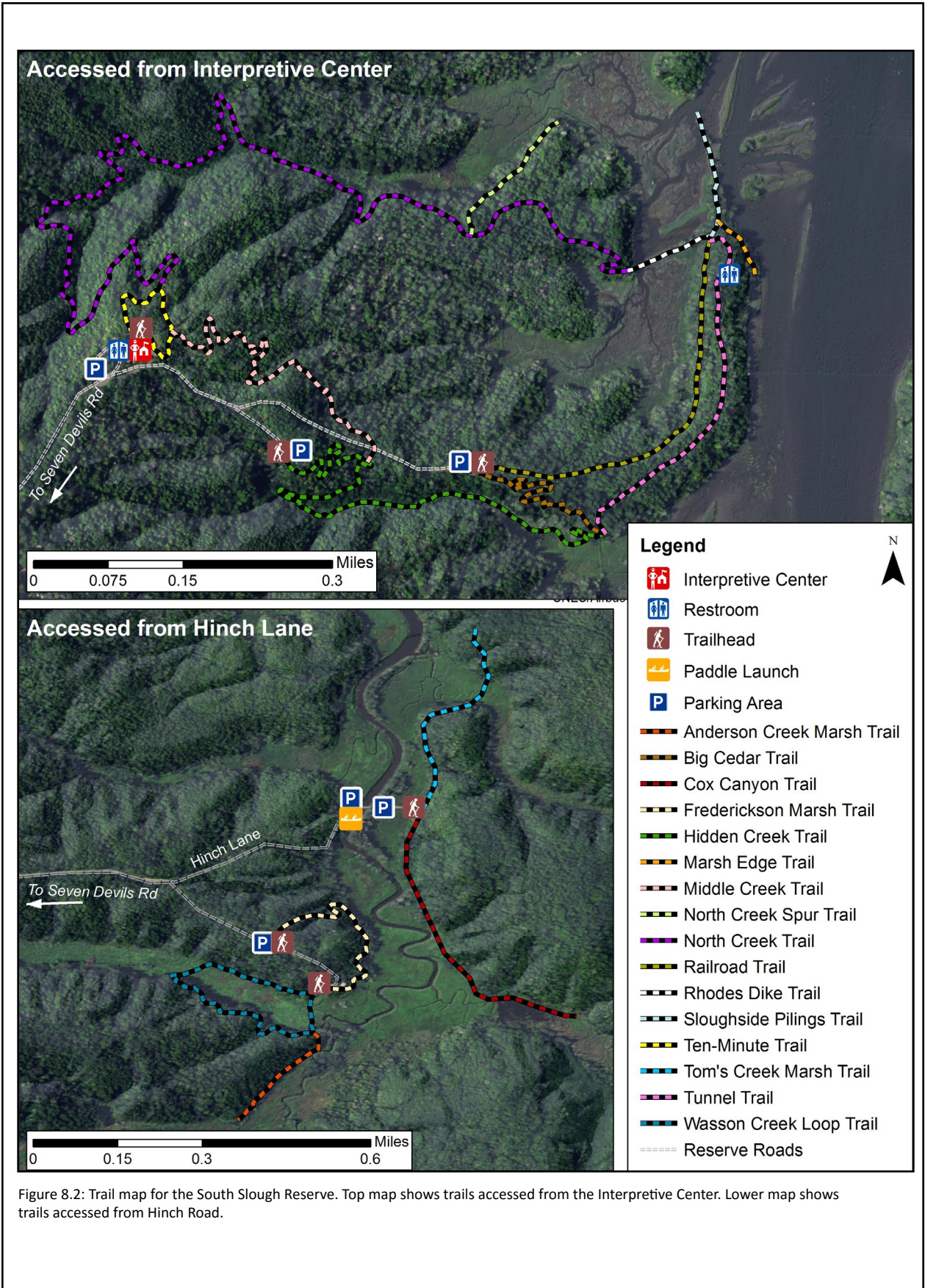


Figure 8.1: Locations of paddle launch points, parking areas, trails, and the Interpretive Center.



Timber Trail: (0.5 mi.) Parallels the Tunnel Trail along an old railway grade and road. Connects the lower parking area with the trail restrooms, the Tunnel Trail, and North Creek Trail. Portions are graveled, and the entire trail is accessible to people with disabilities; however the lower restrooms are not accessible to people with disabilities from this trail.

Big Cedar Trail: (0.4 mi.) The Big Cedar Trail is fully accessible to people with disabilities. It connects the lower parking area with the Hidden Creek Overlook and the boardwalk on the lower Hidden Creek Trail. It received its name from a big cedar tree along its route.

Hidden Creek Trail: (1 mi.) Leads from the trailhead, just below the interpretive center, to the bottom of the Hidden Creek watershed. This is the Reserve's premier trail for K-12 education programs.

Hidden Creek Overlook and boardwalk: (643-foot) the boardwalk extends from the Hidden Creek Trail, through fresh and salt water marshes, to an observation deck. The deck and boardwalk are currently undergoing renovation. The boardwalk, especially in winter and spring when the skunk cabbage is in bloom, is often cited by visitors as a favorite place (Figure 8.3).

Marsh Edge Trail: (365 feet) Begins at its connection to Sloughside Pilings Trail and leads to a series of platforms used for outdoor education classes.

North Creek Trail: (1.5 mi.) Descends through a cathedral forest setting to skunk cabbage marshes. It offers glimpses of fossilized shells in elevated sedimentary sandstone deposits. Here and there along the trail huge stumps provide hints of the forest's pre-industrial history. This

trail connects to the Rhodes Marsh Bridge for access to several other trails.

North Creek Bog Trail: (800 feet) This short, unimproved trail shoots off the North Creek trail to provide views of Sloughside Marsh.

Rhodes Dike Trail: (500 feet) Crosses the Rhodes Marsh Bridge to join the North Creek Trail to several other trails. About a quarter mile uphill from the bridge, the unimproved North Creek Bog Trail provides viewing access to Sloughside Marsh.

Sloughside Pilings Trail: (700 feet) This short trail sits atop a remnant dike, providing visitors with views of an old timber loading area. On either side of the trail is water, which allows the experience to change with each tide.

Tunnel Trail: (0.5 mi.) Connects the observation deck with the trail restrooms, lower trails, and North Creek Trail. Part of the trail travels beneath arched evergreen huckleberry shrubs.



Figure 8.3: Boardwalk crossing over a large bed of skunk cabbage.

Trails accessed from Hinch Lane (Figure 8.2)

Fredrickson Marsh Trail (.35 mi.) Departs from the parking area on Winchester Road and passes through forest before descending to the edge of Fredrickson Marsh. It follows the marsh to the Fredrickson house, where it joins a service road that leads back to the trailhead parking area or connects to the Wasson Creek Loop Trail.

Wasson Creek Loop Trail (.5 mi.) Departs from the service road at the Fredrickson house, and follows along the Wasson Creek lowlands. The trail crosses Wasson Valley and climbs into timbered hills before returning to the service road and the Fredrickson house area. The Wasson drainage is culturally significant as it was home to several families prior to incorporation into the Reserve. The Fredrickson house and barn are cultural remnants of these families that can be observed along this trail.

Paddle craft launch:

Hinch Bridge Paddle Launch: provides access for paddle craft to Winchester Creek. It is located just upstream of the Hinch bridge (Figure 7.4). There is an additional public paddle launch located in Charleston, near the distant water fleet, but this launch is not maintained by the Reserve (Figure 8.4).

Target Audiences & Public Programming

Current target audiences include: local school groups (K-12 and post-secondary), researchers, tourists, local hiking and nature appreciation groups, natural resource managers, local decision makers, and the general public. Public access points and public programming provide

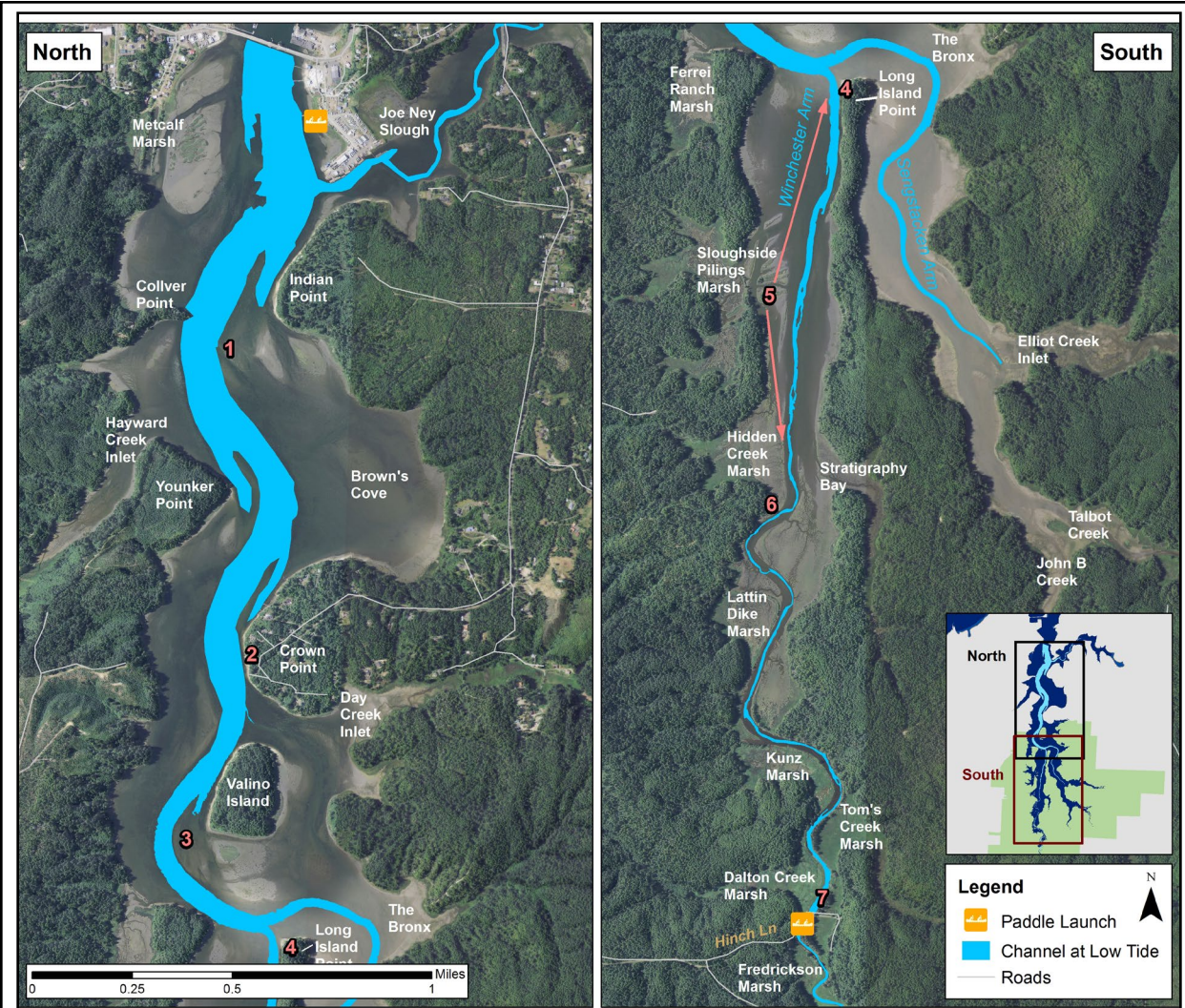
audiences with the ability to interact with the watershed and learn about estuarine science. The Reserve offers a number of formal and informal public programs throughout the year. During the week, the Reserve education staff host a variety of groups, often from public schools in the area. On weekends, programs include workshops, guided field experiences, and special events – like trail races and art shows. Reserve staff participates in many local community events, including festivals and the farmer’s market, providing thematic and mission-based information and materials. The interpretive center also offers exhibits for visitors to informally learn about the Reserve. The primary themes for public programming at the Reserve include estuarine ecology, watershed stewardship, and cultural appreciation.

Visitor Use

Each year the Reserve receives a large number of visitors (Table 8.1). Some attendance is tracked, while other use totals are estimated. Visitors to the Interpretive Center are counted daily and program attendees are tallied as well. Passive use of the Reserve, such as the recreational visitor totals, is estimated based on area tourist information.

Public Access Challenges

Balancing public access and protection of natural resources, while meeting the Reserve mission, is a primary focus for Reserve management. While the Oregon Administrative Rules provide guidance on permissible activities at the Reserve, enforcement is a foremost challenge. Reserve staff is able to affect the



To avoid shallow areas between Charelston and Hinch Bridge:

1 – Aim for Collver Pt to avoid shallows SW of Indian Pt	5 – Stay in middle in this section
2 – Hug Crown Point side, then Valino Island's west side.	6 – Hug south edge of Hidden Creek Pt
3 – Beware of shallows SW of Valino Island	7 – Final 100 m, stay on west side approaching bridge
4 – Do not cut this corner; channel hugs Long Island Pt	

Visitor Type	Description	Number	Timeframe
Informal Education	Interpretive Center Visitors	6,000	Annually
	Formal Pre K – College	5,000	Annually
Formal Education Groups	Community/Interpretive Programs	4,000	Annually
	Training Attendees	200	Annually
Special Event Attendees	Dependent upon year	500	Annually
Recreational Users	Trail and Waterway Users	12,000	Annually
	Hunters, fishers, clamming	300	Annually
Cultural Users	Artists-in-residence	~4	Annually
	Cultural gathering (tribal uses)	50	Seasonally
	Forest product collectors	Variable	As permitted
Commercial Users	Shellfish producers	Variable	As permitted
Illegal Users	Illegal forest product collection, off-highway riders	Variable	Not permitted, but present

Figure 8.4: South Slough paddle map, including recommended route.

Table 8.1: Visitor types and numbers that use the Reserve each year.

activities of those working and visiting the Reserve in a formal capacity. Staff oversight of visiting groups helps keep people aligned to appropriate uses of the Reserve. School groups are provided with guidelines and in general, Reserve staff accompanies these groups. Visiting researchers are required to coordinate their activities with the Reserve Research Coordinator and other formal groups often work with the Public Involvement, Education, and Stewardship Coordinator. For informal visitors of the Reserve, posted signage helps guide their activities. If visitors pass through the interpretive center, they also may encounter Reserve staff for direction. However, the Reserve is a large space with multiple access points. Since the Reserve does not employ staff with the direct purpose of and training for enforcement, illegal and non-permitted activities do occur. The most prevalent challenges include:

- Vandalism
- Theft of forest products
- Theft at the Fredrickson house and barn
- Pleasure/target shooting
- Trash dumping
- Off-highway vehicle use (in the south and east reaches of the Reserve)
- Off trail hiking
- Camping/campfires

See Chapter 6: Resource Protection for more information on each of these activities.

Impacts from public access challenges

Vandalism and theft cause obvious impacts to Reserve infrastructure. Vandalism requires the repair or replacement of buildings, walls, or signage. Theft of lumber from the Frederickson house and barn disturbs the cultural significance

of the structures and threatens the safety of visitors, including the offenders themselves.

A major concern of forest product theft is the dispersal of the deadly Port Orford cedar root rot disease (*Phytophthora lateralis*) (Figure 8.5). Root rot is transported via water and soil on shoes and vehicles. Since Port Orford cedar boughs are a commercially viable goods, picking them may transport the disease. The removal of mushrooms, salal or other forest goods for commercial purposes may also cause habitat disturbance and the transport of non-native, invasive species. Off-trail hiking is a concern for the same reasons. Due to the isolated nature of the Reserve, theft and vandalism incidents occur several times a year.



Figure 8.5: A Port Orford cedar tree that died from root rot infection. The soil surrounding this tree is likely infected and can spread to healthy stands from foot traffic.

Target shooting causes habitat disturbance, frightens wildlife, and sometimes entirely destroys habitat or Reserve property. In recent years, target shooting has caused tree damage, damage to signage, and litter at the Reserve. Off-highway vehicle (OHV) usage seems to be a problem only in the far east of the Reserve managed lands. Similar to shooting, OHV usage can damage habitat, disturb wildlife and is sometimes associated with increased amounts of litter.

Public Access Opportunities and the Visitor Experience

In order to address public access challenges and impacts, the Reserve continues to work with local stakeholders to help increase public outreach regarding Reserve stewardship. County and state law enforcement helps patrol and enforce Reserve rules. Reserve staff presence at community events and increased signage will also assist in the proper usage of Reserve managed lands. Improving signage and public awareness of stewardship for the Reserve is part of a habitat protection goal in the 2017-2022 strategic plan. The Reserve also continues to develop relationships with other organizations, which helps improve public access opportunities and the visitor experience.

Areas of special concern

The Reserve works with various agencies to develop best practices for protecting culturally sensitive sites and threatened or endangered species on Reserve managed lands. Culturally sensitive sites are known throughout the Reserve, although many sites still need to be inventoried. Culturally significant resources

also exist and include plant roots, barks and fibers traditionally used by Native Americans. The Reserve works with sovereign tribal nations to protect these resources and make them available for cultural uses. The Reserve also works to preserve the history of former residents of the slough and facilitates their cultural connections to the land and water. For example, the Reserve documents the experiences of settlers in exhibits at the interpretive center, and makes the Fredrickson area available for the family's annual reunion. The Reserve also works with sovereign tribal nations to coordinate paddle trips and tribal access the cultural resources. During the 2015-2020 period, Reserve staff will continue to work with archeologists and preservation officers to inventory and protect cultural resources. Staff will also continue to work with tribal groups to create opportunities for tribal and other community members to learn about culturally significant resources in the area.

A few threatened and endangered species populations are also known in the Reserve. Populations of the Western lily (*Lillium occidentale*) and salt marsh bird's beak (*Chloropyron maritimum palustre*) grow in the Reserve (Figure 8.6). Bald eagles may also be nesting or roosting within the Reserve. In order to protect and enhance populations of these species, the staff works with the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, as well as the local watershed association and the native plant society. The Reserve takes precautions to guide public visitation away from known populations of endangered species. Staff will be alert for

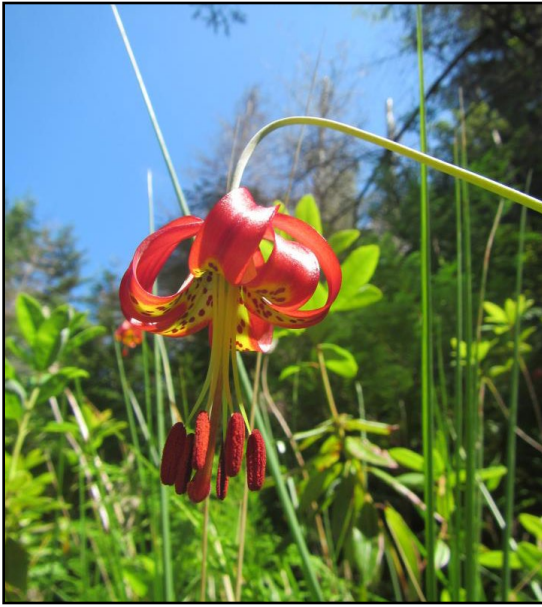


Figure 8.6: Blooming Western lily (*Lilium occidentale*) on Reserve lands.

opportunities to further identify and protect all of these areas of special concern.

Future audiences

Distant visitors: Some people learn of the Reserve before they arrive, through social media or travel services. Others may experience the Reserve without ever visiting by using the internet. Staff assists travel writers or destination marketing specialists with information about the Reserve's programs and resources. The Reserve may want to look for opportunities to enhance the virtual visiting experience for distant visitors, for example, through the expanded use online tools or web cameras with live feeds.

Drone operators: Although drone users are not currently a target audience, the affordability of remotely-operated drones and their growing popularity among both recreational and professional users means that the Reserve will

soon need to consider how their use should be regulated on Reserve managed lands. Remotely operated vehicles such as aerial drones and submersible rovers provide opportunities for recreational use, education, and research. Drones can potentially cause stress for wildlife or crash into remote areas. However, they may also be beneficial for non-recreational activities, including science or education. The Management Commission may need to determine conditions under which drones may be permitted for various purposes, and develop best management practices for their use.

Off-road vehicle operators: From time to time recreational off-road vehicle users gain access to the remote eastern side of the Reserve using abandoned logging roads and improvised trails. Although most operators use their vehicles responsibly, the Reserve may want to work more closely with this special audience to increase awareness of the Reserve's resources and programs to reduce illegal uses.

Chapter 9: Land Acquisition Plan

One of the responsibilities of the Reserve's Stewardship Program is to ensure that high quality estuarine and associated freshwater and upland ecosystems within the Reserve continue to be available for long-term research, education and interpretation. The mission of the Reserve also focuses on providing for the stewardship of key estuarine ecosystem types throughout the lower Columbia biogeographic region (Cape Mendocino, California to the Columbia River). From time to time lands become available that, if acquired, would help the Reserve further its mission. This plan prioritizes key ecological areas for acquisition, should parcels become available, and describes the strategies and limitations in obtaining new lands for Reserve management.

This land acquisition plan is an update of the NOAA-approved Reserve Cooperative Plan for Watershed Conservation (Cooperative Plan), created in 1997. The Cooperative Plan was primarily created to articulate a strategy for the Reserve to spend a \$1.2 million land acquisition bequest from the Chalmer Gustafson estate. Since the Cooperative Plan's creation, the Reserve has acquired several parcels using the Gustafson bequest and additional grant funds. With strategic guidance provided by the Cooperative Plan, this plan is designed to respond to the Reserve's evolving land management goals and serve as the land acquisition plan for the next five years.

Likewise, this section details the relevant state conservation lands acquired since the 2006-2011 Reserve management plan.

Key Ecological Areas for Acquisition

When provided with the opportunity to acquire land, the Reserve is guided by the following principles:

1. Protect the integrity of the Reserve.
2. Enhance the Reserve's ability to more fully meet its research, stewardship and education objectives.
3. Provide for a diversity of habitats.

In addition to these principles, the Reserve acquires land only on a willing buyer, willing seller basis.

When the Cooperative Plan was created, an advisory group, comprised of local stakeholders

Why the Reserve Acquires Land

The Reserve acquires land for a number of reasons, but it is always based on improving Reserve services to the community (local, state, or national). Some of the reasons the Reserve may pursue and acquire property include:

- To protect and enhance water quality in the estuary
- To improve habitat through restoration
- To improve research and understanding of coastal issues
- To conserve land for flood reduction and improve surrounding ecological resiliency for landowners
- To provide recreational and educational opportunities
- To protect culturally sensitive sites.

and Reserve staff, identified key ecological areas for prioritizing acquisitions. Stakeholders, including local tribal nations, county officials, and Reserve neighbors, have continued to inform the acquisition strategy since the plan's approval, which prioritizes acquisition using two geographic scopes: 1) coastal ecosystems within or integrally linked to present Reserve lands; and 2) coastal ecosystems within the larger biogeographic region. Considering these two geographic perspectives, the following key ecological areas are prioritized, in order, for Reserve acquisition (Figure 9.1):

① *Winchester Creek Watershed*: The Winchester Creek watershed is identified as the highest priority area for protecting the Reserve's mission because of its direct influence on Reserve lands and waterways. Winchester Creek is South Slough's largest freshwater source and its dominant fish-bearing stream. The Winchester Creek drainage provides habitat for numerous species, including commercially and culturally important anadromous fish, and helps maintain water quality throughout

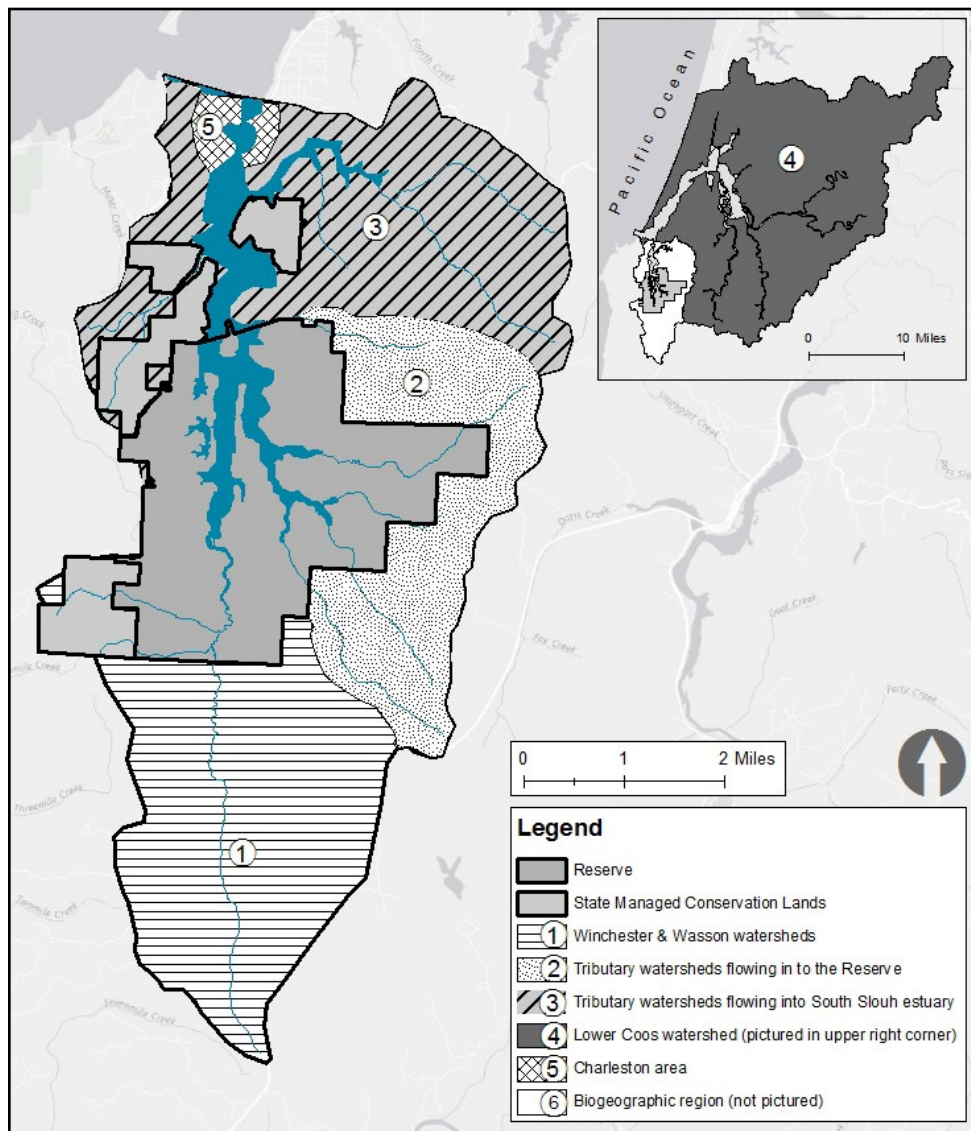


Figure 9.1: Priority areas for acquisition. Numbered areas are associated with corresponding text in this section.

the estuary. Winchester Creek uplands are also highly valuable habitat and provide considerable buffer for lower Reserve lands. Education and research values associated with the Winchester Creek watershed include opportunities to implement ridgetop to estuary restoration projects, and the ability to study and compare ecosystem function between entire drainages. The Reserve currently only manages the majority of two whole sub-basins within the South Slough watershed (Dalton and Wasson Creek basins).

Beyond the Reserve's boundaries the Winchester Creek watershed is primarily used for industrial timber production. While care is taken to minimize the environmental effects of timber harvest activities some associated habitat alterations include habitat fragmentation (upland and in-stream), the use of herbicides and pesticides, habitat homogenization (limited species cultivation), loss of riparian vegetation, and changes to watershed hydrology, sometimes affecting sediment movement in and around forest streams.

② *Tributary watersheds flowing into the Reserve:* Controlling the headwaters of creeks draining into the Reserve is a high priority for protecting Reserve habitats and for enhancing opportunities for watershed-scale management, research, and education. Like Winchester Creek, tributaries that drain directly into the Reserve affect water quality in South Slough.

Issues associated with these areas are similar to the Winchester watershed as these watersheds are also primarily used for industrial timber production (see Winchester Creek Watershed).

③ *Other tributaries, ocean inputs, and shorelines north of the Reserve:* Conservation of these areas is of interest to the Reserve because activities that occur within them can affect conditions within the Reserve.

Many of the uplands and shorelands north of the Reserve are semi-urban or rural residential. Some of areas are also used for industrial or small scale-timber production. Non-point source pollution, invasive species introductions, and increased impervious surfaces are the greatest threats in these areas.

④ *Lower Coos estuary:* These areas provide potential opportunities for partnerships in research and education. Lower Coos estuary lands also include habitat types under-represented in the Reserve. It is more likely that the Reserve would help facilitate partners aligned to the Reserve's mission in acquiring these lands, rather than pursue fee-simple acquisition. Threats to the area include the development of lowland habitats, non-point source and point source pollution, and the effects of resource extraction (habitat fragmentation, sedimentation, and habitat homogenization).

⑤ *Charleston Area:* The Reserve itself is somewhat isolated from urban areas; Charleston provides opportunities for the Reserve to partner with entities closer to a socioeconomic center. Lands in Charleston may be of interest for educational purposes, although it is more likely that the Reserve would help facilitate partners in acquiring these lands, rather than pursuing fee-simple acquisitions. Current threats to this area include non-point and point source pollution

from marine industries (boat painting, seafood processing, oil leaks), impervious surfaces and related runoff, and natural disasters (tsunamis, etc.).

⑥ *Biogeographic region opportunities:* Areas outside of the Coos estuary are of interest for the purpose of conserving biogeographical habitat types under-represented in the Reserve. It is more likely the Reserve would help facilitate partners acquiring these lands, rather than pursuing fee-simple acquisitions. Existing threats to the region include over-development, especially in lowland areas, outfall from resource extraction (sedimentation, chemical pollution, habitat fragmentation), and natural disasters (tsunamis, wildland fire).

Key ecological areas prioritized for acquisition should align with the Reserve’s mission and include one or more of the following habitat types:

- Coastal cliffs, coastal shrub land, coastal grassland, intertidal beaches, or subtidal hard bottoms
- Headwaters of South Slough drainages
- Tidal shore lands in the South Slough estuary
- Coastal uplands, including forests
- Developed shoreline
- Areas that ensure conservation of aesthetically and culturally important sites, views, and sounds
- Areas that contain biologically and archaeologically important resources
- Areas that include fish or shellfish habitat.

Land Acquisition Strategy & Process

During the 2017-2022 period, land acquisition will be opportunistic, which requires a flexible approach. For the Reserve, acquisitions occur based on fair-market values and may rely on the assistance of partners acting as agents to manage grant applications, arrange matching funds, set up conservation easements or otherwise assist with purchases. Acquisitions may include a variety of property transactions including, but not limited to, fee-simple purchases, donations, and land trades.

When a property is determined to be of interest to the Reserve, the Reserve draws from the following resources for input and acquisition coordination:

- Reserve manager
- Reserve Management Commission
- Stewardship Coordinator
- Other Reserve staff
- Agency staff (state personnel, e.g. director, property analyst, asset manager)
- Real estate support
- Legal counsel (state personnel, as needed)
- Partner agencies and organizations

The following steps comprise the process for Reserve property acquisition:

1.) The Reserve is typically approached by a land-owner interested in divesting, and determines conservation and mission-based values for the property. Determination of values is guided by the above described Key Ecological Areas for Acquisition section, site visits, and research on the ecosystem services, site characteristics, and potential for threatened species on the property, property alignment to the Reserve’s mission, and programmatic endeavors.

2.) Once the conservation and mission-based values of the property are determined, the Reserve and partners develop an acquisition or funding strategy for the property. This may include scheduling preliminary appraisals, applying for appropriate grants, seeking funding through partners or donors, determining if a land trade is possible and identifying which potential parcels to trade, or determining how to supplement the costs of acquisition when property is posited for donation. Previous funding sources for Reserve land acquisitions are shown in Table 9.1.

3.) During the development of a funding strategy, the Reserve and DSL investigate property limitations and continue to cultivate partnerships for the project. Investigating the property limitations includes examining

Funding Program/Grant/Method:	Funding Source:
Coastal and Estuarine Land Conservation Program (CELCP)	NOAA
Property, Acquisition and Construction Funds (PAC)	NOAA - NERRS
National Coastal Wetlands Conservation Program (NCWCP)	USFWS
Oregon State-owned land transfers	State of Oregon
Family estates	Chalmer Gustafson estate, etc.
Land trusts	South Coast Land Conservancy, etc.
Friends of South Slough (FOSS)	various sources

Table 9.1: Funding sources that the Reserve uses to acquire lands. This list shows primary funding methods and is not all inclusive.

any liens or easements associated with the property, researching potential problems with acquisition (such as remnant pollution or community opposition), and determines compliance with any local, state, or federal regulations.

4.) In conjunction with the above steps, the Reserve must ask for approval from the Reserve Management Commission and the State Land Board before acquiring real property. Approval by the Management Commission and the State Land Board (both of which only meet a few times a year) is required before funds are spent toward an acquisition. These oversight groups require a description of the property of interest, a justification for why the Reserve wants to acquire the property (including the listed conservation benefits), an explanation of how the acquisition will be financed, and may request a demonstration of community support (e.g., letters of support from stakeholders).

5.) When funding is secured and approval is granted, the Reserve may proceed with appraisals. An appraisal of the property is required before a purchase offer can be made. In compliance with Oregon state regulations, the Reserve is only able to pay at or below the appraised value of the property. In compliance with federal regulations, appraisals must be completed with Uniform Appraisal Standards for Federal Land Acquisitions (Yellow Book). Certain properties may require resource appraisals. Funding for the acquisition needs to include the cost of appraisals.

6.) When funding is secured, all approvals are granted, and appraisals have been completed, the Reserve acquisition team can move forward with making an offer or proceed with a transfer of ownership. Since the Oregon Department

of State Lands is the managing agency of the Reserve, ownership of Reserve lands falls under state ownership. Since state ownership of land removes the parcels from the state and county tax base, it is important to account for this and demonstrate community support for the acquisition.

7.) The specifics of each acquisition will vary, depending on funding sources and the type of acquisition. There may be preliminary and follow-up local, state, and federal regulation compliance. These items include Endangered Species Act assessments, National Environmental Policy Act compliance, and State Historic Preservation Office compliance, among others. The Reserve complies with all local, state, and federal regulations and expectations of due diligence.

8.) Once the acquisition is under Reserve management, Oregon’s management policy for the Reserve, as mandated in O.R.S. 273.553, maintains the protection of the acquisition.

Furthermore, the Oregon Administrative Rules that govern the formal Reserve also guide the management of the acquisition. The Oregon Department of State Lands also classifies the lands under Reserve management as “Special Stewardship Lands” to ensure they are managed for purposes that align with the Reserve’s mission. A Notice of Federal Participation may be required if the funding for the acquisition came from a federal source.

State Conservation Land Acquisitions since 2006

Since the last plan was approved, DSL has benefited from land purchases or transfers that collectively total 1,660 acres of now protected forest and estuarine shorelines. Most of these lands are contiguous with the formal Reserve boundary or directly connected to the Reserve via the estuarine waters (Table 9.2; Figure 9.2).

North Creek Headwaters is a 2.4 acre parcel with a derelict log cabin on it. It is located along Salal Lane next to other residential lots on acre+

Acquisition Name	Acreage	Approx. Location or Coos County Tax Lot	Year Acquired	Seller	Funding Source
North Creek Headwaters (Salal Log Cabin)	2.4	T26S R14W S23 TL700; (62109 Salal Rd)	2008	Sebesta	PAC/Gustafson Estate
Hidden Creek Headwaters (Burbee Property)	1.6	T26S R14W S26 TL900; (61819 Seven Devils Rd)	2008	Burbee	PAC/Gustafson Estate
Wasson Creek Headwaters	670	Lat: 43°16'27.14"N; Long: 124°20'44.10"W; (multiple lots)	2011	Plum Creek Timber Co.	CELCP/Gustafson Estate
Salal Lane Uplands	435	Lat: 43°18'41.38"N; Long: 124°19'55.35"W; (multiple lots)	2011	Roseburg Resources Co.	CELCP/Gustafson Estate
*Common School Fund tracts	312	T26S R13W S19 TL501; T26S R13W S20 TL200; T26S R13W S30 TL101	2011	State of Oregon – transfer of management	CELCP/Gustafson Estate/PAC
Indian Point	239	Lat: 43°19'48.35"N; Long: 124°18'53.94"W; (multiple lots)	2014	Westbrook Family/Bank owned	NCWCP/Gustafson Estate

Table 9.2: Lands acquired by South Slough Reserve since 2006. See Figure 9.2 map for locations of each acquisition.

* The Common School Fund tracts have been considered to be within the federally recognized boundary of the Reserve since its establishment in 1974. However, due to the DSL’s classification of the parcels, grant funds were required to compensate the agency for the purpose of aligning the management of the parcels to the management objectives of the Reserve.

parcels. The acreage not covered by the log cabin is second growth conifer forest upland.

Hidden Creek Headwaters is a 1.6 acre parcel with a derelict shop-like building located on it. The property is located along Seven Devils Road near the entrance to the Reserve Interpretive Center. The acreage not covered by the shop-like building is second growth conifer forest and disturbed pasture grass.

Wasson Creek Headwaters parcels were purchased from Plum Creek Timber Company. These parcels are predominately composed

of young, overly dense forested uplands. All parcels have been logged within the last 30 years and most of them have been logged multiple times. Of the 670 acres, 644 acres are evergreen forest and 26 acres are palustrine forested wetland, mostly located in riparian areas.

Salal Land Upland parcels were purchased from Roseburg Resources, a timber production company. These parcels are predominately composed of young, overly dense forested uplands. All parcels have been logged within the last 30 years and most of them have been

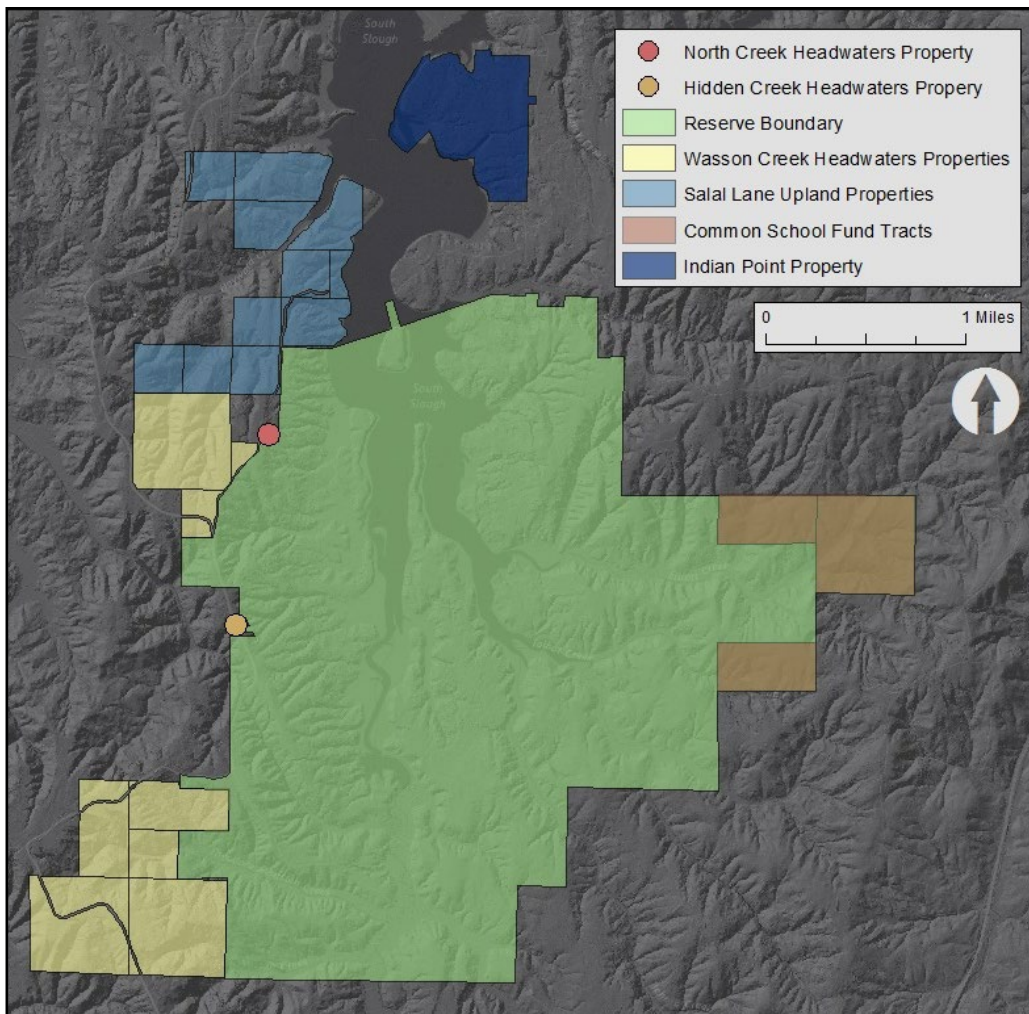


Figure 9.2: Map showing Reserve boundaries along with lands acquired since the last management plan. Refer to Table 9.2 for details on each acquisition.

logged multiple times. Of the 435 acres, 274 acres are evergreen forest, 126 acres are mixed forest, 23 acres are palustrine forested wetland (likely located in riparian areas), 3 acres are estuarine emergent wetland, and 9 acres are unconsolidated shore.

Common School Fund tracts: Compensation was required to the Oregon Department of State Lands Common School Fund, in order to transfer management out of the Common School Fund, which has a management objective to generate revenue, and into Reserve management. All of these lands have been logged at some point. Of the 312 acres, 11 acres are palustrine forested wetland, 2 acres are persistent palustrine emergent wetland, and the rest is relatively young mixed evergreen forest.

Indian Point was bought at auction from the bank when an agreement with the Westbrook family shifted after the death of Hank Westbrook (Figure 9.3). Most parcels were recently logged in the late 1990's while the entire tract has been logged at least once in

the past. The area was slated for high density residential development until a Land Use Board of Appeals zone change was denied in the early 2000's. Remnant roads cover part of the property. Of the 239 acres, an estimated 20 acres is estuarine intertidal aquatic bed, 8 acres is estuarine intertidal emergent wetland, and there is also limited unconsolidated shore. The remaining 211 acres is dense mixed conifer forested upland.

Reserve Boundary Update

During the 2017-2022 planning period, the Reserve plans to pursue a formal update to the Reserve boundary. The Reserve is actively working with NOAA, DSL, the Reserve Management Commission, and local stakeholders to move through the process of formally updating the Reserve boundary to include applicable state managed conservation lands. If new lands are acquired during this planning period, those too will be considered for incorporation into the Reserve.



Figure 9.3: View of Indian Point, the major headland on the left. Acquired in 2014, this diverse land hosts two listed plant species: salt marsh bird's beak, and western lily.

Appendix A

Code of Federal Regulations

Title 15, Volume 3, Revised as of January 1, 2003
From the U.S. Government Printing Office via GPO Access

[CITE: 15CFR921]

TITLE 15--COMMERCE AND FOREIGN TRADE

CHAPTER IX--NATIONAL OCEANIC AND ATMOSPHERIC ADMINISTRATION,
DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

PART 921--NATIONAL ESTUARINE RESEARCH RESERVE SYSTEM

REGULATIONS

Subpart A--General

921.1 Mission, goals and general provisions.

921.2 Definitions.

921.3 National Estuarine Research Reserve System Biogeographic Classification Scheme and Estuarine Typologies.

921.4 Relationship to other provisions of the Coastal Zone Management Act and the Marine Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act.

Subpart B--Site Selection, Post Site Selection and Management Plan Development

921.10 General.

921.11 Site selection and feasibility.

921.12 Post site selection.

921.13 Management plan and environmental impact statement development.

Subpart C--Acquisition, Development and Preparation of the Final Management Plan

921.20 General.

921.21 Initial acquisition and development awards.

Subpart D--Reserve Designation and Subsequent Operation

921.30 Designation of National Estuarine Research Reserves.

921.31 Supplemental acquisition and development awards.

921.32 Operation and management: Implementation of the management plan.

921.33 Boundary changes, amendments to the management plan, and addition of multiple-site components.

Subpart E--Ongoing Oversight, Performance Evaluation and Withdrawal of Designation

921.40 Ongoing oversight and evaluations of designated National Estuarine Research Reserves.

921.41 Withdrawal of designation. Subpart F--Special Research Projects

921.50 General.

921.51 Estuarine research guidelines.

921.52 Promotion and coordination of estuarine research.

Subpart G--Special Monitoring Projects

921.60 General.

Subpart H--Special Interpretation and Education Projects

921.70 General.

Subpart I--General Financial Assistance Provisions

921.80 Application information.

921.81 Allowable costs.

921.82 Amendments to financial assistance awards.

Appendix I to Part 921--Biogeographic Classification Scheme

Appendix II to Part 921--Typology of National Estuarine Research Reserves

Authority: Section 315 of the Coastal Zone Management Act, as amended (16 U.S.C. 1461). Source: 58 FR 38215, July 15, 1993, unless otherwise noted.

Sec. 921.1 Mission, goals and general provisions.

(a) The mission of the National Estuarine Research Reserve Program is the establishment and management, through Federal-state cooperation, of a national system (National Estuarine Research Reserve System or System) of estuarine research reserves (National Estuarine Research Reserves or Reserves) representative of the various regions and estuarine types in the United States. National Estuarine Research Reserves are established to provide opportunities for long-term research, education, and interpretation.

(b) The goals of the Program are to:

1. Ensure a stable environment for research through long-term protection of National Estuarine Research Reserve resources;
2. Address coastal management issues identified as significant through coordinated estuarine research within the System;
3. Enhance public awareness and understanding of estuarine areas and provide suitable opportunities for public education and interpretation;
4. Promote Federal, state, public and private use of one or more Reserves within the System when such entities conduct estuarine research; and
5. Conduct and coordinate estuarine research within the System, gathering and making available information necessary for improved understanding and management of estuarine areas.

(c) National Estuarine Research Reserves shall be open to the public to the extent permitted under state and Federal law. Multiple uses are allowed to the degree compatible with each Reserve's overall purpose as provided in the management plan (see Sec. 921.13) and consistent with paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section. Use levels are set by the state where the Reserve is located and analyzed in the management plan. The Reserve management plan shall describe the uses and establish priorities among these uses. The plan shall identify uses requiring a state permit, as well as areas where uses are encouraged or prohibited. Consistent with resource protection and research objectives, public access and use may be restricted to certain areas or components within a Reserve.

(d) Habitat manipulation for research purposes is allowed consistent with the following limitations. Manipulative research activities must be specified in the management plan, be consistent with the mission and goals of the program (see paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section) and the goals and objectives set forth in the Reserve's management plan, and be limited in nature and extent to the minimum manipulative activity necessary to accomplish the stated research objective. Manipulative research activities with a significant or long-term impact on Reserve resources require the prior approval of the state and the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). Manipulative research activities which can reasonably be expected to have a significant adverse impact on the estuarine

resources and habitat of a Reserve, such that the activities themselves or their resulting short- and long-term consequences compromise the representative character and integrity of a Reserve, are prohibited. Habitat manipulation for resource management purposes is prohibited except as specifically approved by NOAA as: (1) A restoration activity consistent with paragraph (e) of this section; or (2) an activity necessary for the protection of public health or the preservation of other sensitive resources which have been listed or are eligible for protection under relevant Federal or state authority (e.g., threatened/endangered species or significant historical or cultural resources) or if the manipulative activity is a long-term pre-existing use (i.e., has occurred prior to designation) occurring in a buffer area. If habitat manipulation is determined to be necessary for the protection of public health, the preservation of sensitive resources, or if the manipulation is a long-term pre-existing use in a buffer area, then these activities shall be specified in the Reserve management plan in accordance with Sec. 921.13(a)(10) and shall be limited to the reasonable alternative which has the least adverse and shortest term impact on the representative and ecological integrity of the Reserve.

(e) Under the Act an area may be designated as an estuarine Reserve only if the area is a representative estuarine ecosystem that is suitable for long-term research. Many estuarine areas have undergone some ecological change as a result of human activities (e.g., hydrological changes, intentional/unintentional species composition changes--introduced and exotic species). In those areas proposed or designated as National Estuarine Research Reserves, such changes may have diminished the representative character and integrity of the site. Although restoration of degraded areas is not a primary purpose of the System, such activities may be permitted to improve the representative character and integrity of a Reserve. Restoration activities must be carefully planned and approved by NOAA through the Reserve management plan. Historical research may be necessary to determine the "natural" representative state of an estuarine area (i.e., an estuarine ecosystem minimally affected by human activity or influence). Frequently, restoration of a degraded estuarine area will provide an excellent opportunity for management oriented research.

(f) NOAA may provide financial assistance to coastal states, not to exceed, per Reserve, 50 percent of all actual costs or \$5 million whichever amount is less, to assist in the acquisition of land and waters, or interests therein. NOAA may provide financial assistance to coastal states not to exceed 70 percent of all actual costs for the management and operation of, the development and construction of facilities, and the conduct of educational or interpretive activities concerning Reserves (see subpart I). NOAA may provide financial assistance to any coastal state or public or private person, not to exceed 70 percent of all actual costs, to support research and monitoring within a Reserve. Notwithstanding any financial assistance limits established by this Part, when financial assistance is provided from amounts recovered as a result of damage to natural resources located in the coastal zone, such assistance may be used to pay 100 percent of all actual costs of activities carried out with this assistance, as long as such funds are available. Predesignation, acquisition and development, operation and management, special research and monitoring, and special education and interpretation awards are available under the National Estuarine Reserve Program. Predesignation awards are for site selection/feasibility, draft management plan preparation and conduct of basic

characterization studies. Acquisition and development awards are intended primarily for acquisition of interests in land, facility construction and to develop and/or upgrade research, monitoring and education programs. Operation and management awards provide funds to assist in implementing, operating and managing the administrative, and basic research, monitoring and education programs, outlined in the Reserve management plan. Special research and monitoring awards provide funds to conduct estuarine research and monitoring projects with the System. Special educational and interpretive awards provide funds to conduct estuarine educational and interpretive projects within the System.

(g) Lands already in protected status managed by other Federal agencies, state or local governments, or private organizations may be included within National Estuarine Research Reserves only if the managing entity commits to long-term management consistent with paragraphs (d) and (e) of this section in the Reserve management plan. Federal lands already in protected status may not comprise a majority of the key land and water areas of a Reserve (see Sec. 921.11(c)(3)).

(h) To assist the states in carrying out the Program's goals in an effective manner, NOAA will coordinate a research and education information exchange throughout the National Estuarine Research Reserve System. As part of this role, NOAA will ensure that information and ideas from one Reserve are made available to others in the System. The network will enable Reserves to exchange information and research data with each other, with universities engaged in estuarine research, and with Federal, state, and local agencies. NOAA's objective is a system-wide program of research and monitoring capable of addressing the management issues that affect long-term productivity of our Nation's estuaries.

[58 FR 38215, July 15, 1993, as amended at 62 FR 12540, Mar. 17, 1997; 63 FR 26717, May 14, 1998].

Sec. 921.2 Definitions

(a) Act means the Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972, as amended, 16 U.S.C. 1451 et seq.

(b) Assistant Administrator means the Assistant Administrator for Ocean Services and Coastal Zone Management or delegee.

(c) Coastal state means a state of the United States, in or bordering on, the Atlantic, Pacific, or Arctic Ocean, the Gulf of Mexico, Long Island Sound, or one or more of the Great Lakes. For the purposes of these regulations the term also includes Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, Guam, the Commonwealth of the Northern Marianas Islands, the Trust Territories of the Pacific Islands, and American Samoa (see 16 U.S.C. 1453(4)).

(d) State agency means an instrumentality of a coastal state to whom the coastal state has delegated the authority and responsibility for the creation and/or management/operation of a National Estuarine Research Reserve. Factors indicative of this authority may include the power to receive and expend funds on behalf of the Reserve, acquire and sell or convey real and personal property interests, adopt rules for the protection of the Reserve, enforce rules applicable to the Reserve, or develop and implement research and education programs for the reserve. For the purposes of these regulations, the terms "coastal state" and "State agency" shall be synonymous.

(e) Estuary means that part of a river or stream or other body of water having unimpaired connection with the open sea, where the sea water is measurably diluted with fresh water derived from land drainage. The term also includes estuary-type areas with measurable freshwater influence and having unimpaired connections with the open sea, and estuary type areas of the Great Lakes and their connecting waters (see 16 U.S.C. 1453(7)).

(f) National Estuarine Research Reserve means an area that is a representative estuarine ecosystem suitable for long-term research, which may include all of the key land and water portion of an estuary, and adjacent transitional areas and uplands constituting to the extent feasible a natural unit, and which is set aside as a natural field laboratory to provide long-term opportunities for research, education, and interpretation on the ecological relationships within the area (see 16 U.S.C. 1453(8)) and meets the requirements of 16 U.S.C. 1461(b). This includes those areas designated as National Estuarine Sanctuaries or Reserves under section 315 of the Act prior to enactment of the Coastal Zone Act Reauthorization Amendments of 1990 and each area subsequently designated as a National Estuarine Research Reserve.

Sec. 921.3 National Estuarine Research Reserve System Biogeographic Classification Scheme and Estuarine Typologies.

(a) National Estuarine Research Reserves are chosen to reflect regional differences and to include a variety of ecosystem types. A biogeographic classification scheme based on regional variations in the nation's coastal zone has been developed. The biogeographic classification scheme is used to ensure that the National Estuarine Research Reserve System includes at least one site from each region. The estuarine typology system is utilized to ensure that sites in the System reflect the wide range of estuarine types within the United States.

(b) The biogeographic classification scheme, presented in appendix I, contains 29 regions. Figure 1 graphically depicts the biogeographic regions of the United States.

(c) The typology system is presented in Appendix A.

Sec. 921.4 Relationship to other provisions of the Coastal Zone Management Act, and to the Marine Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act.

(a) The National Estuarine Research Reserve System is intended to provide information to state agencies and other entities involved in addressing coastal management issues. Any coastal state, including those that do not have approved coastal management programs under section 306 of the Act, is eligible for an award under the National Estuarine Research Reserve Program (see Sec. 921.2(c)).

(b) For purposes of consistency review by states with a federally approved coastal management program, the designation of a National Estuarine Research Reserve is deemed to be a Federal activity, which, if directly affecting the state's coastal zone, must be undertaken in a manner consistent to the maximum extent practicable with the approved state coastal management program as provided by section 1456(c)(1) of the Act, and implementing regulations at 15 CFR part 930, subpart C. In accordance with section 1456(c)(1) of the Act and the applicable regulations NOAA will be responsible for certifying that designation of the Reserve is consistent with the state's approved coastal management program. The state must concur with or object to the certification. It is recommended that the lead state agency for Reserve designation consult, at the earliest practicable time, with the appropriate state officials concerning the consistency of a proposed National Estuarine Research Reserve.

(c) The National Estuarine Research Reserve Program will be administered in close coordination with the National Marine Sanctuary Program (Title III of the Marine Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act, as amended, 16 U.S.C. 1431-1445), also administered by NOAA. Title III authorizes the Secretary of Commerce to designate discrete areas of the marine environment as National Marine Sanctuaries to protect or restore such areas for their conservation, recreational, ecological, historical, research, educational or esthetic values. National Marine Sanctuaries and Estuarine Research Reserves may not overlap, but may be adjacent.

Sec. 921.10 General.

(a) A coastal state may apply for Federal financial assistance for the purpose of site selection, preparation of documents specified in Sec. 921.13 (draft management plan (DMP) and environmental impact statement (EIS)), and the conduct of limited basic characterization studies. The total Federal share of this assistance may not exceed \$100,000. Federal financial assistance for preacquisition activities under Sec. 921.11 and Sec. 921.12 is subject to the total \$5 million for which each Reserve is eligible for land acquisition. Notwithstanding the above, when financial assistance is provided from amounts recovered as a result of damage to natural resources located in the coastal zone, such assistance may be used to pay 100 percent of all actual costs of activities carried out with this assistance, as long as such funds are available. In the case of a biogeographic region (see appendix I) shared by two or more coastal states, each state is eligible for Federal financial assistance to establish a separate National Estuarine Research Reserve within their respective portion of the shared biogeographic region. Each separate National Estuarine Research Reserve is eligible for the full complement of funding. Financial assistance application procedures are specified in subpart I.

(b) In developing a Reserve program, a state may choose to develop a multiple-site Reserve reflecting a diversity of habitats in a single biogeographic region. A multiple-site Reserve allows the state to develop complementary research and educational programs within the individual components of its multi-site Reserve. Multiple-site Reserves are treated as one Reserve in terms of financial assistance and development of an overall management framework and plan. Each individual site of a proposed multiple-site Reserve shall be evaluated both separately under Sec. 921.11(c) and collectively as part of the site selection process. A coastal state may propose to establish a multiple-site Reserve at the time of the initial site selection, or at any point in the development or operation of the Reserve. If the state decides to develop a multiple-site National Estuarine Research Reserve after the initial acquisition and development award is made for a single site, the proposal is subject to the requirements set forth in Sec. 921.33(b). However, a state may not propose to add one or more sites to an already designated Reserve if the operation and management of such Reserve has been found deficient and uncorrected or the research conducted is not consistent with the Estuarine Research Guidelines referenced in Sec. 921.51. In addition, Federal funds for the acquisition of a multiple-site Reserve remain limited to \$5,000,000 (see Sec. 921.20). The funding for operation of a multiple-site Reserve is limited to the maximum allowed for any one Reserve per year (see Sec. 921.32(c)) and preacquisition funds are limited to \$100,000 per Reserve. Notwithstanding the above, when financial assistance is provided from amounts recovered as a result of damage to natural resources located in the coastal zone, such assistance may be used to pay 100 percent of all actual costs of activities carrier out with this assistance, as long as such funds are available.[58 FR 38215, July 15, 1993, as amended at 63 FR 26717, May 14, 1998].

Sec. 921.11 Site selection and feasibility.

(a) A coastal state may use Federal funds to establish and implement a site selection process which is approved by NOAA.

(b) In addition to the requirements set forth in subpart I, a request for Federal funds for site selection must contain the following programmatic information:

1. A description of the proposed site selection process and how it will be implemented in conformance with the biogeographic classification scheme and typology (Sec. 921.3);
2. An identification of the site selection agency and the potential management agency; and
3. A description of how public participation will be incorporated into the process (see Sec. 921.11(d)).

(c) As part of the site selection process, the state and NOAA shall evaluate and select the final site(s). NOAA has final authority in approving such sites. Site selection shall be guided by the following principles:

1. The site's contribution to the biogeographical and typological balance of the National Estuarine Research Reserve System. NOAA will give priority consideration to proposals to establish Reserves in biogeographic regions or subregions or incorporating types that are not represented in the system. (see the biogeographic classification scheme and typology set forth in Sec. 921.3 and appendices I and II);
2. The site's ecological characteristics, including its biological productivity, diversity of flora and fauna, and capacity to attract a broad range of research and educational interests. The proposed site must be a representative estuarine ecosystem and should, to the maximum extent possible, be an estuarine ecosystem minimally affected by human activity or influence (see Sec. 921.1(e)).
3. Assurance that the site's boundaries encompass an adequate portion of the key land and water areas of the natural system to approximate an ecological unit and to ensure effective conservation. Boundary size will vary greatly depending on the nature of the ecosystem. Reserve boundaries must encompass the area within which adequate control has or will be established by the managing entity over human activities occurring within the Reserve. Generally, Reserve boundaries will encompass two areas: Key land and water areas (or "core area") and a buffer zone. Key land and water areas and a buffer zone will likely require significantly different levels of control (see Sec. 921.13(a)(7)). The term "key land and water areas" refers to that core area within the Reserve that is so vital to the functioning of the estuarine ecosystem that it must be under a level of control sufficient to ensure the long-term viability of the Reserve for research on natural processes. Key land and water areas, which comprise the core area, are those ecological units of a natural estuarine system which preserve, for research purposes, a full range of significant physical, chemical and biological factors contributing to the diversity of fauna, flora and natural processes occurring within the estuary. The determination of which land and water

areas are "key" to a particular Reserve must be based on specific scientific knowledge of the area. A basic principle to follow when deciding upon key land and water areas is that they should encompass resources representative of the total ecosystem, and which if compromised could endanger the research objectives of the Reserve. The term buffer zone refers to an area adjacent to or surrounding key land and water areas and essential to their integrity. Buffer zones protect the core area and provide additional protection for estuarine-dependent species, including those that are rare or endangered. When determined appropriate by the state and approved by NOAA, the buffer zone may also include an area necessary for facilities required for research and interpretation. Additionally, buffer zones should be established sufficient to accommodate a shift of the core area as a result of biological, ecological or geomorphological change which reasonably could be expected to occur. National Estuarine Research Reserves may include existing Federal or state lands already in a protected status where mutual benefit can be enhanced. However, NOAA will not approve a site for potential National Estuarine Research Reserve status that is dependent primarily upon the inclusion of currently protected Federal lands in order to meet the requirements for Reserve status (such as key land and water areas). Such lands generally will be included within a Reserve to serve as a buffer or for other ancillary purposes; and may be included, subject to NOAA approval, as a limited portion of the core area;

4. The site's suitability for long-term estuarine research, including ecological factors and proximity to existing research facilities and educational institutions;
5. The site's compatibility with existing and potential land and water uses in contiguous areas as well as approved coastal and estuarine management plans; and
6. The site's importance to education and interpretive efforts, consistent with the need for continued protection of the natural system.

(d) Early in the site selection process the state must seek the views of affected landowners, local governments, other state and Federal agencies and other parties who are interested in the area(s) being considered for selection as a potential National Estuarine Research Reserve. After the local government(s) and affected landowner(s) have been contacted, at least one public meeting shall be held in the vicinity of the proposed site. Notice of such a meeting, including the time, place, and relevant subject matter, shall be announced by the state through the area's principal newspaper at least 15 days prior to the date of the meeting and by NOAA in the Federal Register.

(e) A state request for NOAA approval of a proposed site (or sites in the case of a multisite Reserve) must contain a description of the proposed site(s) in relationship to each of the site selection principals (Sec. 921.11(c)) and the following information:

1. An analysis of the proposed site(s) based on the biogeographical scheme/typology discussed in Sec. 921.3 and set forth in appendices I and II;
2. A description of the proposed site(s) and its (their) major resources, including location, proposed boundaries, and adjacent land uses. Maps are required;

3. A description of the public participation process used by the state to solicit the views of interested parties, a summary of comments, and, if interstate issues are involved, documentation that the Governor(s) of the other affected state(s) has been contacted. Copies of all correspondence, including contact letters to all affected landowners must be appended;
 4. A list of all sites considered and a brief statement of the reasons why a site was not preferred; and
 5. A nomination of the proposed site(s) for designation as a National Estuarine Research Reserve by the Governor of the coastal state in which the state is located.
- (f) A state proposing to reactivate an inactive site, previously approved by NOAA for development as an Estuarine Sanctuary or Reserve, may apply for those funds remaining, if any, provided for site selection and feasibility (Sec. 921.11a) to determine the feasibility of reactivation. This feasibility study must comply with the requirements set forth in Sec. 921.11 (c) through (e).

Sec. 921.12 Post site selection.

(a) At the time of the coastal state's request for NOAA approval of a proposed site, the state may submit a request for funds to develop the draft management plan and for preparation of the EIS. At this time, the state may also submit a request for the remainder of the predesignation funds to perform a limited basic characterization of the physical, chemical and biological characteristics of the site approved by NOAA necessary for providing EIS information to NOAA. The state's request for these post site selection funds must be accompanied by the information specified in subpart I and, for draft management plan development and EIS information collection, the following programmatic information:

1. A draft management plan outline (see Sec. 921.13(a) below); and
2. An outline of a draft memorandum of understanding (MOU) between the state and NOAA detailing the Federal-state role in Reserve management during the initial period of Federal funding and expressing the state's long-term commitment to operate and manage the Reserve.

(b) The state is eligible to use the funds referenced in Sec. 921.12(a) after the proposed site is approved by NOAA under the terms of Sec. 921.11.

Sec. 921.13 Management plan and environmental impact statement development.

(a) After NOAA approves the state's proposed site and application for funds submitted pursuant to Sec. 921.12, the state may begin draft management plan development and the collection of information necessary for the preparation by NOAA of an EIS. The state shall develop a draft management plan, including an MOU. The plan shall set out in detail:

1. Reserve goals and objectives, management issues, and strategies or actions for meeting the goals and objectives;
2. An administrative plan including staff roles in administration, research, education/interpretation, and surveillance and enforcement;
3. A research plan, including a monitoring design;
4. An education/interpretive plan;
5. A plan for public access to the Reserve;
6. A construction plan, including a proposed construction schedule, general descriptions of proposed developments and general cost estimates. Information should be provided for proposed minor construction projects in sufficient detail to allow these projects to begin in the initial phase of acquisition and development. A categorical exclusion, environmental assessment, or EIS may be required prior to construction;
7. (i) An acquisition plan identifying the ecologically key land and water areas of the Reserve, ranking these areas according to their relative importance, and including a strategy for establishing adequate long-term state control over these areas sufficient to provide protection for Reserve resources to ensure a stable environment for research. This plan must include an identification of ownership within the proposed Reserve boundaries, including land already in the public domain; the method(s) of acquisition which the state proposes to use—acquisition (including less-than-fee simple options) to establish adequate long-term state control; an estimate of the fair market value of any property interest--which is proposed for acquisition; a schedule estimating the time required to complete the process of establishing adequate state control of the proposed research reserve; and a discussion of any anticipated problems. In selecting a preferred method(s) for establishing adequate state control over areas within the proposed boundaries of the Reserve, the state shall perform the following steps for each parcel determined to be part of the key land and water areas (control over which is necessary to protect the integrity of the Reserve for research purposes), and for those parcels required for research and interpretive support facilities or buffer purposes:
 - (A) Determine, with appropriate justification, the minimum level of control(s) required [e.g., management agreement, regulation, less-than-fee simple property interest (e.g., conservation easement), fee simple property acquisition, or a combination of these approaches]. This does not preclude the future necessity of increasing the level of state control;
 - (B) Identify the level of existing state control(s);
 - (C) Identify the level of additional state control(s), if any, necessary to meet the minimum requirements identified in paragraph (a)(7)(i)(A) of this section;

(D) Examine all reasonable alternatives for attaining the level of control identified in paragraph (a)(7)(i)(C) of this section, and perform a cost analysis of each; and (E) Rank, in order of cost, the methods (including acquisition) identified in paragraph (a)(7)(i)(D) of this section.

(ii) An assessment of the relative cost-effectiveness of control alternatives shall include a reasonable estimate of both short-term costs (e.g., acquisition of property interests, regulatory program development including associated enforcement costs, negotiation, adjudication, etc.) and long-term costs (e.g., monitoring, enforcement, adjudication, management and coordination). In selecting a preferred method(s) for establishing adequate state control over each parcel examined under the process described above, the state shall give priority consideration to the least costly method(s) of attaining the minimum level of long-term control required. Generally, with the possible exception of buffer areas required for support facilities, the level of control(s) required for buffer areas will be considerably less than that required for key land and water areas. This acquisition plan, after receiving the approval of NOAA, shall serve as a guide for negotiations with landowners. A final boundary for the reserve shall be delineated as a part of the final management plan;

8. A resource protection plan detailing applicable authorities, including allowable uses, uses requiring a permit and permit requirements, any restrictions on use of the research reserve, and a strategy for research reserve surveillance and enforcement of such use restrictions, including appropriate government enforcement agencies;

9. If applicable, a restoration plan describing those portions of the site that may require habitat modification to restore natural conditions;

10. If applicable, a resource manipulation plan, describing those portions of the Reserve buffer in which long-term pre-existing (prior to designation) manipulation for reasons not related to research or restoration is occurring. The plan shall explain in detail the nature of such activities, shall justify why such manipulation should be permitted to continue within the reserve buffer; and shall describe possible effects of this manipulation on key land and water areas and their resources;

11. A proposed memorandum of understanding (MOU) between the state and NOAA regarding the Federal-state relationship during the establishment and development of the National Estuarine Research Reserve, and expressing a long-term commitment by the state to maintain and manage the Reserve in accordance with section 315 of the Act, 16 U.S.C. 1461, and applicable regulations. In conjunction with the MOU, and where possible under state law, the state will consider taking appropriate administrative or legislative action to ensure the long-term protection and operation of the National Estuarine Research Reserve. If other MOUs are necessary (such as with a Federal agency, another state agency or private organization), drafts of such MOUs must be included in the plan. All necessary MOU's shall be signed prior to Reserve

designation; and 12. If the state has a federally approved coastal management program, a certification that the National Estuarine Research Reserve is consistent to the maximum extent practicable with that program. See Secs. 921.4(b) and 921.30(b).

(b) Regarding the preparation of an EIS under the National Environmental Policy Act on a National Estuarine Research Reserve proposal, the state and NOAA shall collect all necessary information concerning the socioeconomic and environmental impacts associated with implementing the draft management plan and feasible alternatives to the plan. Based on this information, the state will draft and provide NOAA with a preliminary EIS.

(c) Early in the development of the draft management plan and the draft EIS, the state and NOAA shall hold a scoping meeting (pursuant to NEPA) in the area or areas most affected to solicit public and government comments on the significant issues related to the proposed action. NOAA will publish a notice of the meeting in the Federal Register at least 15 days prior to the meeting. The state shall be responsible for publishing a similar notice in the local media.

(d) NOAA will publish a Federal Register notice of intent to prepare a draft EIS. After the draft EIS is prepared and filed with the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), a Notice of Availability of the draft EIS will appear in the Federal Register. Not less than 30 days after publication of the notice, NOAA will hold at least one public hearing in the area or areas most affected by the proposed national estuarine research reserve. The hearing will be held no sooner than 15 days after appropriate notice of the meeting has been given in the principal news media by the state and in the Federal Register by NOAA. After a 45-day comment period, a final EIS will be prepared by the state and NOAA.

Sec. 921.20 General.

The acquisition and development period is separated into two major phases. After NOAA approval of the site, draft management plan and draft MOU, and completion of the final EIS, a coastal state is eligible for an initial acquisition and development award(s). In this initial phase, the state should work to meet the criteria required for formal research reserve designation; e.g., establishing adequate state control over the key land and water areas as specified in the draft management plan and preparing the final management plan. These requirements are specified in Sec. 921.30. Minor construction in accordance with the draft management plan may also be conducted during this initial phase. The initial acquisition and development phase is expected to last no longer than three years. If necessary, a longer time period may be negotiated between the state and NOAA. After Reserve designation, a state is eligible for a supplemental acquisition and development award(s) in accordance with Sec. 921.31. In this post-designation acquisition and development phase, funds may be used in accordance with the final management plan to construct research and educational facilities, complete any remaining land acquisition, for program development, and for restorative activities identified in the final management plan. In any case, the amount of Federal

financial assistance provided to a coastal state with respect to the acquisition of lands and waters, or interests therein, for any one National Estuarine Research Reserve may not exceed an amount equal to 50 percent of the costs of the lands, waters, and interests therein or \$5,000,000, whichever amount is less, except when the financial assistance is provided from amounts recovered as a result of damage to natural resources located in the coastal zone, in which case the assistance may be used to pay 100 percent of all actual costs of activities carrier out with this assistance, as long as such funds are available.

[58 FR 38215, July 15, 1993, as amended at 62 FR 12540, Mar. 17, 1997; 63 FR 26717, May 14, 1998].

Sec. 921.21 Initial acquisition and development awards.

(a) Assistance is provided to aid the recipient prior to designation in:

1. Acquiring a fee simple or less-than-fee simple real property interest in land and water areas to be included in the Reserve boundaries (see Sec. 921.13(a)(7); Sec. 921.30(d));
2. Minor construction, as provided in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section;
3. Preparing the final management plan; and
4. Initial management costs, e.g., for implementing the NOAA approved draft management plan, hiring a Reserve manager and other staff as necessary and for other management-related activities. Application procedures are specified in subpart I.

(b) The expenditure of Federal and state funds on major construction activities is not allowed during the initial acquisition and development phase. The preparation of architectural and engineering plans, including specifications, for any proposed construction, or for proposed restorative activities, is permitted. In addition, minor construction activities, consistent with paragraph (c) of this section also are allowed. The NOAA-approved draft management plan must, however, include a construction plan and a public access plan before any award funds can be spent on construction activities.

(c) Only minor construction activities that aid in implementing portions of the management plan (such as boat ramps and nature trails) are permitted during the initial acquisition and development phase. No more than five (5) percent of the initial acquisition and development award may be expended on such activities. NOAA must make a specific determination, based on the final EIS, that the construction activity will not be detrimental to the environment.

(d) Except as specifically provided in paragraphs (a) through (c) of this section, construction projects, to be funded in whole or in part under an acquisition and development award(s), may not be initiated until the Reserve receives formal designation (see Sec. 921.30). This requirement has been adopted to ensure that substantial progress in establishing adequate state control over key land and water areas has been made and that a final management plan is completed before major sums are spent on construction. Once substantial progress in establishing adequate state control/acquisition has been made, as defined by the state in the management plan, other activities guided by the final management plan may begin with NOAA's approval.

(e) For any real property acquired in whole or part with Federal funds for the Reserve, the state shall execute suitable title documents to include substantially the following provisions, or otherwise append the following provisions in a manner acceptable under applicable state law to the official land record(s):

1. Title to the property conveyed by this deed shall vest in the [recipient of the award granted pursuant to section 315 of the Act, 16 U.S.C. 1461 or other NOAA approved state agency] subject to the condition that the designation of the [name of National Estuarine Reserve] is not

withdrawn and the property remains part of the federally designated [name of National Estuarine Research Reserve]; and

2. In the event that the property is no longer included as part of the Reserve, or if the designation of the Reserve of which it is part is withdrawn, then NOAA or its successor agency, after full and reasonable consultation with the State, may exercise the following rights regarding the disposition of the property:

(i) The recipient may retain title after paying the Federal Government an amount computed by applying the Federal percentage of participation in the cost of the original project to the current fair market value of the property;

(ii) If the recipient does not elect to retain title, the Federal Government may either direct the recipient to sell the property and pay the Federal Government an amount computed by applying the Federal percentage of participation in the cost of the original project to the proceeds from the sale (after deducting actual and reasonable selling and repair or renovation expenses, if any, from the sale proceeds), or direct the recipient to transfer title to the Federal Government. If directed to transfer title to the Federal Government, the recipient shall be entitled to compensation computed by applying the recipient's percentage of participation in the cost of the original project to the current fair market value of the property; and

(iii) Fair market value of the property must be determined by an independent appraiser and certified by a responsible official of the state, as provided by Department of Commerce regulations at 15 CFR part 24, and Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition for Federal and Federally assisted programs at 15 CFR part 11.

(f) Upon instruction by NOAA, provisions analogous to those of Sec. 921.21(e) shall be included in the documentation underlying less-than-fee-simple interests acquired in whole or part with Federal funds.

(g) Federal funds or non-Federal matching share funds shall not be spent to acquire a real property interest in which the state will own the land concurrently with another entity unless the property interest has been identified as a part of an acquisition strategy pursuant to Sec. 921.13(7) which has been approved by NOAA prior to the effective date of these regulations.

(h) Prior to submitting the final management plan to NOAA for review and approval, the state shall hold a public meeting to receive comment on the plan in the area affected by the estuarine research reserve. NOAA will publish a notice of the meeting in the Federal Register at least 15 days prior to the public meeting. The state shall be responsible for having a similar notice published in the local newspaper(s).

Sec. 921.30 Designation of National Estuarine Research Reserves.

(a) The Under Secretary may designate an area proposed for designation by the Governor of the state in which it is located, as a National Estuarine Research Reserve if the Under Secretary finds:

1. The area is a representative estuarine ecosystem that is suitable for long-term research and contributes to the biogeographical and typological balance of the System;
2. Key land and water areas of the proposed Reserve, as identified in the management plan, are under adequate state control sufficient to provide long-term protection for reserve resources to ensure a stable environment for research;
3. Designation of the area as a Reserve will serve to enhance public awareness and understanding of estuarine areas, and provide suitable opportunities for public education and interpretation;
4. A final management plan has been approved by NOAA;
5. An MOU has been signed between the state and NOAA ensuring a long-term commitment by the state to the effective operation and implementation of the area as a National Estuarine Research Reserve;
6. All MOU's necessary for reserve management (i.e., with relevant Federal, state, and local agencies and/or private organizations) have been signed; and
7. The coastal state in which the area is located has complied with the requirements of subpart B.

(b) NOAA will determine whether the designation of a National Estuarine Research Reserve in a state with a federally approved coastal zone management program directly affects the coastal zone. If the designation is found to directly affect the coastal zone, NOAA will make a consistency determination pursuant to Sec. 307(c)(1) of the Act, 16 U.S.C. 1456, and 15 CFR part 930, subpart C. See Sec. 921.4(b). The results of this consistency determination will be published in the Federal Register when the notice of designation is published. See Sec. 921.30(c).

(c) NOAA will publish the notice of designation of a National Estuarine Research Reserve in the Federal Register. The state shall be responsible for having a similar notice published in the local media.(d) The term state control in Sec. 921.30(a)(3) does not necessarily require that key land and water areas be owned by the state in fee simple. Acquisition of less-than-fee simple interests e.g., conservation easements) and utilization of existing state regulatory measures are encouraged where the state can demonstrate that these interests and measures assure adequate long-term state control consistent with the purposes of the research reserve (see also Secs. 921.13(a)(7); 921.21(g)). Should the state later elect to purchase an interest in such lands using NOAA funds, adequate justification as to the need for such acquisition must be provided to NOAA.

Sec. 921.31 Supplemental acquisition and development awards.

After National Estuarine Research Reserve designation, and as specified in the approved management plan, a coastal state may request a supplemental acquisition and/or development award(s) for acquiring additional property interests identified in the management plan as necessary to strengthen protection of key land and water areas and to enhance long-term protection of the area for research and education, for facility and exhibit construction, for restorative activities identified in the approved management plan, for administrative purposes related to acquisition and/or facility construction and to develop and/or upgrade research, monitoring and education/interpretive programs. Federal financial assistance provided to a National Estuarine Research Reserve for supplemental development costs directly associated with facility construction (i.e., major construction activities) may not exceed 70 percent of the total project cost, except when the financial assistance is provided from amounts recovered as a result of damage to natural resources located in the coastal zone, in which case the assistance may be used to pay 100 percent of the costs. NOAA must make a specific determination that the construction activity will not be detrimental to the environment. Acquisition awards for the acquisition of lands or waters, or interests therein, for any one reserve may not exceed an amount equal to 50 percent of the costs of the lands, waters, and interests therein of \$5,000,000, whichever amount is less, except when the financial assistance is provided from amounts recovered as result of damage to natural resources located in the coastal zone, in which case the assistance may be used to pay 100 percent of all actual costs of activities carrier out with this assistance, as long as such funds are available. In the case of a biogeographic region (see appendix I) shared by two or more states, each state is eligible independently for Federal financial assistance to establish a separate National Estuarine Research Reserve within their respective portion of the shared biogeographic region. Application procedures are specified in subpart I. Land acquisition must follow the procedures specified in Secs. 921.13(a)(7), 921.21(e) and (f) and 921.81.

[58 FR 38215, July 15, 1993, as amended at 62 FR 12540, Mar. 17, 1997; 63 FR 26717, May 14, 1998].

Sec. 921.32 Operation and management: Implementation of the management plan.

(a) After the Reserve is formally designated, a coastal state is eligible to receive Federal funds to assist the state in the operation and management of the Reserve including the management of research, monitoring, education, and interpretive programs. The purpose of this Federally funded operation and management phase is to implement the approved final management plan and to take the necessary steps to ensure the continued effective operation of the Reserve.

(b) State operation and management of the Reserves shall be consistent with the mission, and shall further the goals of the National Estuarine Research Reserve program (see Sec. 921.1).

(c) Federal funds are available for the operation and management of the Reserve. Federal funds provided pursuant to this section may not exceed 70 percent of the total cost of operating and managing the Reserve for any one year, except when the financial assistance is provided from amounts recovered as a result of damage to natural resources located in the coastal zone, in which case the assistance may be used to pay 100 percent of the costs. In the case of a biogeographic region (see Appendix I) shared by two or more states, each state is eligible for Federal financial assistance to establish a separate Reserve within their respective portion of the shared biogeographic region (see Sec. 921.10).

(d) Operation and management funds are subject to the following limitations:

1. Eligible coastal state agencies may apply for up to the maximum share available per Reserve for that fiscal year. Share amounts will be announced annually by letter from the Sanctuary and Reserves Division to all participating states. This letter will be provided as soon as practicable following approval of the Federal budget for that fiscal year.
2. No more than ten percent of the total amount (state and Federal shares) of each operation and management award may be used for construction-type activities.

[58 FR 38215, July 15, 1993, as amended at 62 FR 12541, Mar. 17, 1997].

Sec. 921.33 Boundary changes, amendments to the management plan, and addition of multiple-site components.

(a) Changes in the boundary of a Reserve and major changes to the final management plan, including state laws or regulations promulgated specifically for the Reserve, may be made only after written approval by NOAA. NOAA may require public notice, including notice in the Federal Register and an opportunity for public comment before approving a boundary or management plan change. Changes in the boundary of a Reserve involving the acquisition of properties not listed in the management plan or final EIS require public notice and the opportunity for comment; in certain cases, a categorical exclusion, an environmental assessment and possibly an environmental impact statement may be required. NOAA will place a notice in the Federal Register of any proposed changes in Reserve boundaries or proposed major changes to the final management plan. The state shall be responsible for publishing an equivalent notice in the local media. See also requirements of Secs. 921.4(b) and 921.13(a)(11).

(b) As discussed in Sec. 921.10(b), a state may choose to develop a multiple-site National Estuarine Research Reserve after the initial acquisition and development award for a single site has been made. NOAA will publish notice of the proposed new site including an invitation for comments from the public in the Federal Register. The state shall be responsible for publishing an equivalent notice in the local newspaper(s). An EIS, if required, shall be prepared in accordance with section Sec. 921.13 and shall include an administrative framework for the multiple-site Reserve and a description of the complementary research and educational programs within the Reserve. If NOAA determines, based on the scope of the project and the issues associated with the additional site(s), that an environmental assessment is sufficient to establish a multiple-site Reserve, then the state shall develop a revised management plan which, concerning the additional component, incorporates each of the elements described in Sec. 921.13(a). The revised management plan shall address goals and objectives for all components of the multi-site Reserve and the additional component's relationship to the original site(s).

(c) The state shall revise the management plan for a Reserve at least every five years, or more often if necessary. Management plan revisions are subject to (a) above.

(d) NOAA will approve boundary changes, amendments to management plans, or the addition of multiple-site components, by notice in the Federal Register. If necessary NOAA will revise the designation document (findings) for the site.

Sec. 921.40 Ongoing oversight and evaluations of designated National Estuarine Research Reserves.

(a) The Sanctuaries and Reserve Division shall conduct, in accordance with section 312 of the Act and procedures set forth in 15 CFR part 928, ongoing oversight and evaluations of Reserves. Interim sanctions may be imposed in accordance with regulations promulgated under 15 CFR part 928.

(b) The Assistant Administrator may consider the following indicators of non-adherence in determining whether to invoke interim sanctions:

1. Inadequate implementation of required staff roles in administration, research, education/interpretation, and surveillance and enforcement. Indicators of inadequate implementation could include: No Reserve Manager, or no staff or insufficient staff to carry out the required functions.
2. Inadequate implementation of the required research plan, including the monitoring design. Indicators of inadequate implementation could include: Not carrying out research or monitoring that is required by the plan, or carrying out research or monitoring that is inconsistent with the plan.
3. Inadequate implementation of the required education/interpretation plan. Indicators of inadequate implementation could include: Not carrying out education or interpretation that is required by the plan, or carrying out education/interpretation that is inconsistent with the plan.
4. Inadequate implementation of public access to the Reserve. Indicators of inadequate implementation of public access could include: Not providing necessary access, giving full consideration to the need to keep some areas off limits to the public in order to protect fragile resources.
5. Inadequate implementation of facility development plan. Indicators of inadequate implementation could include: Not taking action to propose and budget for necessary facilities, or not undertaking necessary construction in a timely manner when funds are available.
6. Inadequate implementation of acquisition plan. Indicators of inadequate implementation could include: Not pursuing an aggressive acquisition program with all available funds for that purpose, not requesting promptly additional funds when necessary, and evidence that adequate long-term state control has not been established over some core or buffer areas, thus jeopardizing the ability to protect the Reserve site and resources from offsite impacts.
7. Inadequate implementation of Reserve protection plan. Indicators of inadequate implementation could include: Evidence of non-compliance with Reserve restrictions, insufficient surveillance and enforcement to assure that restrictions on use of the Reserve are adhered to, or evidence that Reserve resources are being damaged or destroyed as a result of the above.

8. Failure to carry out the terms of the signed Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) between the state and NOAA, which establishes a long-term state commitment to maintain and manage the Reserve in accordance with section 315 of the Act. Indicators of failure could include: State action to allow incompatible uses of state-controlled lands or waters in the Reserve, failure of the state to bear its fair share of costs associated with long-term operation and management of the Reserve, or failure to initiate timely updates of the MOU when necessary.

Sec. 921.41 Withdrawal of designation.

The Assistant Administrator may withdraw designation of an estuarine area as a National Estuarine Research Reserve pursuant to and in accordance with the procedures of section 312 and 315 of the Act and regulations promulgated thereunder.

Appendix B

Oregon Revised Statutes

SOUTH SLOUGH ESTUARY

273.553 South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve; agreement between Oregon and federal government; rules.

(1) It is the policy of the State of Oregon to maintain the South Slough of Coos Bay, from Valino Island southward, inclusive, as a national estuarine research reserve, acquired as the South Slough Estuary Sanctuary pursuant to chapter 415, Oregon Laws 1975, as the first estuarine sanctuary in the United States to be created under Section 312 of the Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972 (P.L. 92-583) and redesignated as the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve by federal law (P.L. 99-272). The management policy for the reserve is to:

- (a) Maintain the integrity of the estuary;
- (b) Protect the estuary from uses and activities, both within and beyond its boundaries, that may alter or affect the ecosystem and its natural dynamic processes; and
- (c) Preserve the area for long-term scientific and educational uses.

(2) Responsibility for completing purchase of the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve is vested with the Department of State Lands. The department acts for the State of Oregon in any transaction respecting the purchase of acreage for the reserve on or after October 4, 1977.

(3) Except as necessary to achieve the policy set forth in subsection (1) of this section and any standards established in the Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972 (P.L. 92-583) or any rules, regulations or agreements adopted pursuant thereto, the reserve is open to the public. However, to protect the estuarine ecosystems, public use of the reserve may be limited and controlled by the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve Management Commission in consultation with any technical management team established pursuant to an agreement between the State of Oregon and the Office of Ocean and Coastal Resource Management of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration of the United States Department of Commerce. The commission shall adopt rules to carry out the intent of this subsection.

(4) The South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve Management Commission shall administer the reserve, subject to any agreement respecting the reserve between the State of Oregon and the federal Office of Ocean and Coastal Resource Management.

(5) The agency that acquired title to the reserve shall cause title to be cleared in the name of the State of Oregon. [1977 c.496 §1; 2003 c.14 §134]

273.554 South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve Management Commission; powers; rules; fees; membership; procedures; expenses.

(1) For the purpose of providing for the administration of the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve in a manner consistent with the provisions of ORS 273.553, there is created the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve Management Commission. The commission shall have the authority, in accordance with the policies formulated by the State Land Board, to:

- (a) Conduct the day-to-day operation and management of the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve with the administrative support of the Department of State Lands;
- (b) Appoint a manager and other staff necessary to carry out this section; and
- (c) Apply for, receive and expend moneys from the federal government and from this state or any agency thereof for the purpose of carrying out this section.

(2) In accordance with applicable provisions of ORS chapter 183, the commission may adopt rules necessary to:

- (a) Carry out the commission's responsibilities pursuant to ORS 273.553; and
- (b) Implement a system of fees to recover the costs of carrying out the management established in ORS 273.553, including fees for use of facilities at the reserve, fees for research activities conducted at the reserve, visitor activities fees and parking fees.

(3) The commission shall consist of nine members appointed by the Governor as follows:

- (a) A representative of common schools in the area of the reserve;
- (b) One authorized representative of the Coos County Board of Commissioners;
- (c) One authorized representative of the governing body of the Oregon International Port of Coos Bay;
- (d) The Director of the Department of State Lands or a designee thereof;
- (e) One authorized representative of the federal Office of Ocean and Coastal Resource Management;
- (f) Two representatives with an interest in marine science, one from the University of Oregon Institute of Marine Biology at Charleston and one from Oregon State University;
- (g) One member selected from the general public at large; and
- (h) One representative of Oregon Indian tribes appointed after consultation with the Commission on Indian Services.

(4) The members appointed by the Governor under subsection (3)(a), (f), (g) and (h) of this section shall serve for terms of four years and members appointed under subsection (3)(b) and (c) of this section shall serve for terms of two years. The Director of the Department of State Lands or the designee of the director, if appointed in place of the director, shall serve as the permanent chairperson of the commission. The commission shall select one of its members as vice chairperson. The chairperson and vice chairperson shall have duties and powers necessary for the performance of the functions of such offices as the commission determines. The vice

chairperson shall act as the chairperson of the commission in the absence of the chairperson. The vice chairperson shall serve for a term of one year, subject to reelection by the commission.

(5) Each member of the commission shall have one vote, except that the member who is the authorized representative of the federal Office of Ocean and Coastal Resource Management shall be a nonvoting member. A majority of the commission constitutes a quorum for the transaction of business.

(6) Members of the commission are not entitled to compensation, but in the discretion of the State Land Board may be reimbursed for actual and necessary travel and other expenses incurred by them in the performance of their official duties, subject to laws regulating travel and other expenses of state officers and employees. [1977 c.496 §2; 1983 c.485 §1; 2003 c.14 §135; 2005 c.146 §1; 2005 c.528 §1; 2013 c.1 §25]

273.555 [Formerly 273.210; 1967 c.421 §16; renumbered 273.085]

273.556 South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve Management Account.

(1) The South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve Management Account is established within the Common School Fund. Except for moneys otherwise designated by statute, all moneys received by the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve Management Commission shall be paid into the State Treasury and credited to the account. All moneys in the account are appropriated continuously and shall be used by the commission for the purpose of carrying out ORS 273.554. Interest on moneys in the account shall be credited to the Common School Fund.

(2) The commission shall keep a record of all moneys deposited in the account. The record shall indicate by separate cumulative accounts the source from which the moneys are derived and the individual activity or program against which each withdrawal is charged. [1977 c.496 §3; 2003 c.14 §136; 2005 c.528 §2]

273.557 Appeal to State Land Board.

(1) Jurisdiction for review of actions and proposed actions of the commission which are claimed to be in violation of any provision of ORS 273.553 or 273.554 is conferred upon the State Land Board. Proceedings for review of such actions may be instituted by filing a request for review with the State Land Board.

(2) The request for review by the State Land Board need only state the action or proposed action of the commission in question and the particular provisions of ORS 273.553 or 273.554 which are violated thereby. Copies of the request for review shall be served by registered or certified mail upon the commission.

(3) The State Land Board may affirm, reverse or modify the action under review and make such other disposition of the matter as it deems necessary to carry out the provisions of ORS 273.553 and 273.554. The State Land Board shall make its decision within 60 days after the date on which the request for review was filed. [1977 c.496 §5]

273.558 Penalties; enforcement; injunctive relief.

(1) Violation of a rule adopted under ORS 273.553 (3) is a Class D violation for each day of violation.

(2) In addition to all other remedies, when it appears to the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve Management Commission that a person has engaged in, or is engaging in, any act that violates a rule adopted under ORS 273.553 (3), the commission may direct the Attorney General to apply to the court for an injunction restraining the person from violating such rule. [1977 c.496 §4; 1999 c.1051 §169; 2003 c.14 §137]

273.560 [Renumbered 273.305 and then 273.521]

273.561 [1979 c.711 §1; repealed by 1983 c.786 §1]

273.562 [1973 c.532 §2; repealed by 1979 c.711 §10]

Appendix C

Oregon Administrative Rules

(Contains rules filed before April 15, 2013)

Department of State Lands South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve

DIVISION 1 – Procedural Rules

142-001-0000

Notice of Proposed Rule

Prior to the adoption, amendment, repeal of any rule, the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve Management Commission shall give notice of the proposed adoption, amendment, or repeal:

(1) In the Secretary of State's Bulletin referred to in [ORS 183.360](#) at least fifteen (15) days prior to the effective date.

(2) By mailing a copy of the Notice to persons on the Commission's mailing list established pursuant to [ORS 183.335\(6\)](#).

(3) By submitting a copy of the Notice to all of the newspapers published in Coos County, Oregon.

(4) By mailing a copy of the Notice to the Department of Fish and Wildlife, the Department of Environmental Quality, the State Forestry Department, and the Coos County Board of Commissioners.

Stat. Auth.: [ORS 183](#) & [ORS 273](#)

Stats. Implemented: [ORS 273](#)

Hist.: SSES 1-1978, f. & ef. 11-2-78; SSNER 1-1998, f. & cert. ef. 7-15-98

142-001-0005

Model Rules of Procedure

Pursuant to ORS 183.341, the Division of State Lands and the State Land Board adopt the Attorney General's Model Rules of Procedure under the Administrative Procedures Act as amended October 3, 2001.

[ED. NOTE: The full text of the Attorney General's Model Rules of Procedure is available from the office of the Attorney General or the Division of State Lands, South Slough National Estuarine Reserve.]

Stat. Auth.: ORS 183 & ORS 273

Stats. Implemented: ORS 273

Hist.: SSES 2-1978, f. & ef. 12-1-78; SSES 1-1980, f. & ef. 12-23-80; SSES 1-1982, f. & ef. 2-25-82; SSES 1-1984, f. & ef. 3-30-84; SSNER 1-1998, f. & cert. ef. 7-15-98; SSNER 1-2002, f. & cert. ef. 7-12-02

Oregon Administrative Rules

(Contains rules filed before April 15, 2013.)

Department of State Lands South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve

DIVISION 5 – Research and Education Activities 142-005-0005

Notification of Research

Any person(s) planning to conduct research within the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve must submit a description of their proposed research no later than 30 days prior to the onset of the research project with their request for permission to conduct research. Written permission must be obtained from the Manager of SSNERR before initiating any research. The researcher(s) must also agree to submit a report of their findings to South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve, no later than 6 months after the completion of field work.

Stat. Auth.: [ORS 183](#) & [ORS 273](#)

Stats. Implemented: [ORS 273](#)

Hist.: SSNER 1-1998, f. & cert. ef. 7-15-98

142-005-0010

Temporary Structures

Temporary structures for research or educational purposes are permitted for the duration of the project.

Stat. Auth.: [ORS 183](#) & [ORS 273](#)

Stats. Implemented: [ORS 273](#)

Hist.: SSNER 1-1998, f. & cert. ef. 7-15-98

Oregon Administrative Rules
contains rules filed before April 15, 2013.

Department of State Lands
South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve

Division 10 – Public Uses of the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve
142-010-0005

Purpose

These rules are designed to complement the primary management objectives and the primary scientific objectives of the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve by regulating public use of the Reserve. The primary management objective of the Reserve is to maintain the integrity of the estuary; to protect it from both internal and external sources of stress which may alter or affect the nature of the ecosystem and to preserve the area for long-term scientific and educational uses. All publicly owned areas of the Reserve are available to scientists, students and the general public on a basis desirable and permissible for coordinated research and educational uses and for other compatible uses to the extent they do not interfere with the primary management and scientific objectives. These rules are adopted in accordance with plans and policies defined in the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve Management Plan; Oregon Revised Statutes ([ORS 273 .533 et seq.](#)); the federal Grant-in-Aid (fi04-4-158-12001, as amended); and Section 315 of the Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972 as amended.

Stat. Auth.: ORS 273

Stats. Implemented: [ORS 273](#)

Hist.: SSES 2-1980, f. & ef. 12-23-80; SSES 2-1982, f. & ef. 3-2-82; SSNER 1-1998, f. & cert. ef. 7-15-98

142-010-0010

Definitions

As used in these rules, unless the context provides otherwise:

- (1) "Advisory Group" means the group of local interested persons and persons with special expertise in fields relating to the Reserve appointed by the Commission to advise the Commission.
- (2) "Commercial" refers to an activity undertaken for economic gain, as opposed to an activity for personal use or enjoyment.
- (3) "Commission" means the Management Commission of the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve created by ORS 273 .554.
- (4) "Forest Greenery" means plant material gathered in the Reserve and used for decorative purposes.

(5) "In Kind Services" means materials or services (provided to the Reserve by a group or person) whose value to the Reserve is at least equal to the fee that the Reserve would otherwise charge the group or person for use of the Reserve.

(6) "Manager" means the Manager of the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve appointed by the Commission.

(7) "Marketing and Promotion" means Reserve-sponsored events of regional or statewide significance that promote tourism or promote partnerships with local communities, other agencies, or scientific, educational or economic development organizations.

(8) "Non-Profit Entity" means a group having a 501 (c)(3) tax-exempt status filed with the Internal Revenue Service

(9) "OCZM grant" means the original NOAA Grant-in-Aid financial award.

(10) "Operations Manager" is the person responsible for the Reserve's management, facilities, fiscal services and recordkeeping. In the Reserve manager's absence, the Operations Manager may exercise any of the Reserve manager's responsibilities.

(11) "Person" means individuals, a public or private corporation, an unincorporated association, a partnership or a government entity.

(12) "Public Use" means any use of the Reserve that is not a part of a formal Reserve educational or scientific program.

(13) "Recreational" refers to an activity undertaken for personal enjoyment as opposed to economic gain.

(14) "Reserve" means Sanctuary as defined in the Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972 which is the lands, within the boundary of the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve under the jurisdiction of the Commission, in which the State of Oregon has legal interest, including, but not limited to fee ownership, conservation easement, and/or life estate. ORS 273.553(1) states, "...the South Slough Estuary Sanctuary pursuant to chapter 415, Oregon Laws 1975, as the first estuarine sanctuary in the United States..." and the 1986 reauthorization of the Coastal Zone Management Act changed the name from Estuarine "Sanctuary" to National Estuarine Research Reserve. South Slough Estuarine Sanctuary is doing business as the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve for the purpose of day-to-day business. "Reserve" includes but is not limited to classrooms, day use areas and shelters, cabins, yurts, meeting halls, and other Reserve facilities.

(15) "Special Event" means an activity sponsored by the Reserve that provides education to Reserve visitors, or that otherwise promotes the mission of the Reserve.

(16) "Stewardship" means activities conducted to maintain and restore the integrity and natural dynamic processes of an estuarine ecosystem.

Stat. Auth.: ORS 273

Stats. Implemented: ORS 273

Hist.: SSES 2-1980, f. & ef. 12-23-80; SSES 2-1982, f. & ef. 3-2-82; SSNER 1-1998, f. & cert. ef. 7-15-98; SSNER 1-2008, f. & cert. ef. 4-14-08

142-010-0015

Permitted Activities

Subject to action by the Commission taken under rules 142-010-0025 and 142-010-0030, the following noncommercial uses of the Reserve are permitted without special restrictions. State and federal regulations will govern these activities where applicable:

- (1) Canoeing and rowboating;
- (2) Aesthetic appreciation;
- (3) Recreational fishing;
- (4) Hiking;
- (5) Wildlife observation.

Stat. Auth.: ORS 273

Stats. Implemented: [ORS 273](#)

Hist.: SSES 2-1980, f. & ef. 12-23-80; SSES 2-1982, f. & ef. 3-2-82; SSNER 1-1998, f. & cert. ef. 7-15-98

142-010-0020

Restricted Activities

The following public, noncommercial uses of the Reserve are permitted with restrictions, subject to applicable fees under OAR 142, division 15 and to action taken by the Commission under rules 142-010-0025, 142-010-0030 and other appropriate governmental agency regulations:

- (1) Picking of forest greenery for personal use is permitted only upon written approval by the Manager. The amount gathered should be no more than 10 pounds per day unless otherwise stated in the permit.
- (2) Overnight use of the Reserve is allowed only with written permission of the Manager.

(3) Chemical fertilizers, herbicides, or pesticides will be used within the Reserve only if necessary to assure sound management of the ecosystem. Any allowed application of such chemicals shall be approved in writing by the Commission, after consultation with the Advisory Group, in accordance with best management practices so as to prevent direct application or discharge to the estuary waters. It is the intent of the Commission to preferentially utilize nonchemical management techniques of pest control. Chemicals will be utilized for pest or weed control only after it has been determined that the nature and integrity of the ecosystem is endangered by the pest or weed.

(4) Digging for artifacts is not permitted except as pursuant to ORS 273 .705 et seq. and with the written permission of the Commission.

(5) Open fires are allowed only upon approval of the Reserve Manager.

(6) Hunting is allowed only during authorized waterfowl and game hunting seasons, subject to Department of Fish and Wildlife regulations, except in specific areas where the Commission may prohibit hunting for the protection of the health, safety, and welfare of the public. Areas closed to hunting will be posted.

(7) Hunting and Observation Blinds are allowed within the boundaries of the Reserve, but a blind must be taken down and removed from the Reserve at the end of each day.

(8) Motorized boating is permitted except in special protection zones: areas excepted for public health, safety, and welfare, educational uses, and scientific research. Motorized boating will be at reduced speed that will limit the wake to less than a one-foot wave height in order to prevent disturbance to the tidelands and wildlife habitats.

(9) Construction of boat launch and tie-up facilities is permitted only as necessary for health, safety, research, or education.

(10) Oyster culture is limited to the 100 acres as provided in the OCZM grant. The Commission shall recommend appropriate action on each oyster culture application or changes to existing plats within the Reserve to the Reserve of Agriculture.

(11) Tree removal from Reserve lands may occur only with the approval of the Commission, after consultation with the Advisory Group, and only for the following reasons:

(a) Salvage of windthrow, dead, and dying trees;

(b) High risk to invasion of forest insects and diseases;

(c) Hazards to visiting public and scientists;

- (d) Experimental and scientific projects;
- (e) To maintain adequate clear space for existing powerline corridors;
- (f) Thinning to maintain a healthy forest stand.
- (12) Firewood cutting for personal use requires a permit from the Reserve Manager.
- (13) Pets are permitted only if on a leash or under the direct control of the owner.
- (14) Recreational mineral gathering requires a permit from the Manager.
- (15) Horseback riding is permitted except in designated areas and not within any watercourse. Information about designated areas may be obtained at Reserve Headquarters.
- (16) Picnicking is permitted except in designated areas.
- (17) Recreational mushroom gathering, up to a maximum of one gallon per day, is permitted except in designated areas.
- (18) Recreational berry picking is permitted except in designated areas.
- (19) Recreational bait gathering is permitted except in designated areas subject to Oregon Reserve of Fish and Wildlife regulations.
- (20) Recreational clamming is permitted except in designated areas.
- (21) No dredging, filling or altering the natural environment except upon the approval of the proposed activities by the Commission.
- (22) Motorized off-road vehicles are prohibited except on designated county-maintained roads or driveways approved by the Commission.
- (23) Construction of roads is not allowed except by special permit issued by the Commission.
- (24) No deliberate introduction of a non-native species (or subspecies) within the Research Reserve's administrative boundaries without the prior approval of the Commission
- (25) Trapping within the Reserve's administrative boundaries is prohibited, except for research or management purposes, and then only with the approval of the Manager.
- (26) New or increased commercial activities which are not existing as of the creation of the Reserve in June 1974 must be approved by the Commission.

Stat. Auth.: ORS 273

Stats. Implemented: ORS 273

Hist.: SSES 2-1980, f. & ef. 12-23-80; SSES 2-1982, f. & ef. 3-2-82; SSNER 1-1998, f. & cert. ef. 7-15-98;
SSNER 1-2008, f. & cert. ef. 4-14-08

142-010-0021

Prohibited Activities

The following uses of the Reserve are prohibited activities as determined by the Commission, by authority of [ORS 273 .553\(3\)](#):

- (1) Commercial bait gathering;
- (2) Commercial timber harvest;
- (3) Commercial mineral removal;
- (4) Discharge of firearms for pleasure shooting or for target practice;
- (5) Picking of forest greenery and cascara bark gathering for commercial purposes.

Stat. Auth.: ORS 273

Stats. Implemented: [ORS 273](#)

Hist.: SSES 2-1982, f. & ef. 3-2-82; SSNER 1-1998, f. & cert. ef. 7-15-98

142-010-0025

Public Health, Safety, and Welfare

The Manager is authorized to take actions necessary for maintaining public health, safety, and welfare. The Manager's actions under such authority shall be consistent with the primary objectives of the Reserve.

Stat. Auth.: ORS 273

Stats. Implemented: [ORS 273](#)

Hist.: SSES 2-1980, f. & ef. 12-23-80; SSES 2-1982, f. & ef. 3-2-82; SSNER 1-1998, f. & cert. ef. 7-15-98

142-010-0030

Temporary Closure

Any activity may be suspended or any area closed if necessary for the conduct of appropriate scientific research, stewardship and educational activities. Such closure will occur only after consultation with the Advisory Group, and with approval of the Commission. If, based on the scientific data and knowledge acquired and on scientific judgment, uses are found to have a detrimental or adverse impact, actual or potential, on the ecosystem or resources thereof, appropriate agencies of the State of Oregon shall take immediate action to control such uses so as to remove or negate their impacts and restore the system to its natural state as it was prior to such activities.

Stat. Auth.: ORS 273

Stats. Implemented: [ORS 273](#)

Hist.: SSES 2-1980, f. & ef. 12-23-80; SSES 2-1982, f. & ef. 3-2-82; SSNER 1-1998, f. & cert. ef. 7-15-98

142-010-0035

Roads and Trails

Roads and trails other than those authorized by the Commission will be closed. No roads or trails will be constructed without approval of the Commission. Access to Reserve lands shall be on authorized roads and trails only, and not through private property unless the state has acquired an easement.

Stat. Auth.: ORS 273

Stats. Implemented: [ORS 273](#)

Hist.: SSES 2-1980, f. & ef. 12-23-80; SSES 2-1982, f. & ef. 3-2-82; SSNER 1-1998, f. & cert. ef. 7-15-98

142-010-0040

Leases and Rentals

Any fee for a lease or rental approved by the Commission for any use of the Reserve lands or buildings shall be at fair market value.

Stat. Auth.: ORS 273

Stats. Implemented: [ORS 273](#)

Hist.: SSES 2-1980, f. & ef. 12-23-80; SSES 2-1982, f. & ef. 3-2-82; SSNER 1-1998, f. & cert. ef. 7-15-98

142-010-0045

Short-Term Use of Facilities

Overnight use of buildings and facilities is permitted upon approval by the Manager. Employee housing can be provided in a manner consistent with applicable policy governing use of state owned property by state employees (ORS 182.425 and 182.435). See OAR 142, division 015 for applicable fees.

Stat. Auth.: ORS 273

Stats. Implemented: ORS 273

Hist.: SSES 2-1980, f. & ef. 12-23-80; SSES 1-1985, f. & ef. 7-24-85; SSNER 1-1998, f. & cert. ef. 7-15-98; SSNER 1-2008, f. & cert. ef. 4-14-08

142-010-0050

Violation of Rules

Violation of these rules is punishable, upon conviction, by a fine of not more than \$100 for each day of violation, as set forth in [ORS 273 .558](#). The Commission may appropriately appeal for injunctive relief and pursue civil remedies which require the rehabilitation or restoration of Reserve lands damaged in violation of these rules.

Stat. Auth.: ORS 273

Stats. Implemented: [ORS 273](#)

Hist.: SSES 2-1980, f. & ef. 12-23-80; SSES 2-1982, f. & ef. 3-2-82; SSNER 1-1998, f. & cert. ef. 7-15-98

142-010-0055

Review of Rules

[ORS 273 .557](#) provides for State Land Board review of Commission rules. Individuals or organizations concerned about possible improper use or restriction of use of the Reserve may petition the State Land Board or the Office of Coastal Zone Management for review of the management program.

Stat. Auth.: ORS 273

Stats. Implemented: [ORS 273](#)

Hist.: SSES 2-1980, f. & ef. 12-23-80; SSES 2-1982, f. & ef. 3-2-82; SSNER 1-1998, f. & cert. ef. 7-15-98

142-010-0060

Amendment of Rules

These rules are subject to amendment by the Commission in accordance with the Attorney General's Model Rules of Administrative Procedure. Amended rules must be consistent with the policies of the Reserve Management Plan.

Stat. Auth.: ORS 273

Stats. Implemented: [ORS 273](#)

Hist.: SSES 2-1980, f. & ef. 12-23-80; SSES 2-1982, f. & ef. 3-2-82; SSNER 1-1998, f. & cert. ef. 7-15-98

The official copy of an Oregon Administrative Rule is contained in the Administrative Order filed at the Archives Division, 800 Summer St. NE, Salem, Oregon 97310. Any discrepancies with the published version are satisfied in favor of the Administrative Order. The Oregon Administrative Rules and the Oregon Bulletin are copyrighted by the Oregon Secretary of State.

© 2012, Oregon Secretary of State. All Rights Reserved

Appendix D

**Memorandum of Agreement
Between
The National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

The Oregon Department of State Lands
and
The South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve
Management Commission**

Detailing the state-federal roles in the management of the
South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve

This Memorandum of Agreement states the provisions for the cooperative management of South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve in the state of Oregon, between the State of Oregon and the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration's Office of Ocean and Coastal Resource Management.

WHEREAS, the Oregon Legislature has determined that the waters and related coastal habitats of the state provide unique opportunities to study the natural and human processes occurring within the estuarine ecosystems of the state, to contribute to the science of estuarine ecosystem processes, to enhance environmental education opportunities, and to provide scientific information for effective coastal zone management in state of Oregon; and

WHEREAS, the State of Oregon has determined that the resources of the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve and the values they represent to the citizens of Oregon and the United States will benefit from the management of these resources as part of the National Estuarine Research Reserve System; and

WHEREAS, the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) has concurred with these findings and pursuant to its authority under section 315 of the Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972, as amended (CZMA, P.L. 92-583, 16 U.S.C. 1461) and in accordance with implementing regulations at 15 CFR 921.30 has designated the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve; and

WHEREAS, the Oregon Department of State Lands and the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve Management Commission were designated by the Oregon Legislative Assembly to be responsible for managing the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve and acknowledge the value of state-federal cooperation for the long-term management of the Reserve in a manner consistent with the purpose of their designation; and

MEMORANDUM OF AGREEMENT
NOAA – DSL – SSNERR
PAGE 2 OF 6

WHEREAS, the management plan describes the goals, objectives, strategies/actions, administrative structure, and institutional arrangements for the Reserve, including this MOA and others;

NOW THEREFORE, in consideration of the mutual agreements herein, NOAA and State of Oregon agree to the following:

ARTICLE I: STATE-FEDERAL ROLES IN RESERVE MANAGEMENT

A. Role of Oregon in Reserve Management

The South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve Management Commission and the Oregon Department of State Lands shall:

1. be responsible for compliance with all federal laws and regulations, and ensure that the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve management plan is consistent with the provisions of the CZMA and regulations;
2. ensure protection of the natural and cultural resources of the Reserve, and ensure enforcement of the provisions of state law, including rules and regulations of the Oregon coastal management program if applicable;
3. annually apply for, budget, and allocate funds received for Reserve operations, research and monitoring, education and stewardship; and as necessary, land acquisition and Reserve facility construction;
4. conduct and coordinate research and monitoring programs that encourage scientists from a variety of institutions to work together to understand the ecology of the Reserve ecosystem to improve coastal management;
5. conduct and maintain programs that disseminate research results via materials, activities, workshops, and conferences to resource users, state and local agencies, school systems, general public, and other interested parties;
6. provide staff and endeavor to secure state funding for the manager, education coordinator and research coordinator;
7. secure facilities and equipment required to implement the provisions within the Reserve management plan;

MEMORANDUM OF AGREEMENT
NOAA – DSL – SSNERR
PAGE 3 OF 6

8. ensure adequate funding for facilities operation and maintenance;
9. maintain effective liaison with local, regional, state, and federal policy makers, regulators and the general public;
10. serve as principal negotiators in issues involving proposed boundary changes and/or amendments to the Reserve management plan;
11. respond to NOAA's requests for information, particularly cooperative agreement and grant progress reports and evaluation findings, including necessary actions and recommendations, made pursuant to Section 312 of the CZMA.

B. Federal Role in Reserve Management

NOAA's Office of Ocean and Coastal Resource Management shall:

1. serve to administer the provisions of the Sections 312 and 315 of the CZMA to ensure that each Reserve operates in accordance with goals of the Reserve system and the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve management plan;
2. review and process applications for financial assistance from the Oregon Department of State Lands, consistent with 15 CFR 921, for management and operation, and as appropriate, land acquisition and facility construction;
3. advise Oregon Department of State Lands and the South Slough Management Commission of existing and emerging national and regional issues that have bearing on the Reserve and Reserve system;
4. maintain an information exchange network among Reserves, including available research and monitoring data and educational materials developed within the Reserve system;
5. to the extent possible, facilitate NOAA resources and capabilities in support of Reserve goals and programs.

C. General Provisions

1. Nothing in this agreement or subsequent financial assistance awards shall obligate either party in the expenditure of funds, or for future payments of money, in excess of appropriations authorized by law.
2. Both parties agree to comply with all applicable federal and state laws regulating ethical conduct of public officers and employees.
3. Each party will comply with all applicable laws, regulations, and executive orders relative to Equal Employment Opportunity.
4. Upon termination of this agreement or any subsequent financial assistance awards to Oregon Department of State Lands, any equipment purchased for studies to further this agreement will be retained by the party that made the initial purchase.
5. A free exchange of research and assessment data between the parties is encouraged and is necessary to ensure success of cooperative studies.

D. Other Provisions

1. Nothing in this agreement diminishes the independent authority or coordination responsibility of either party in administering its respective statutory obligations. Nothing in this agreement is intended to conflict with current written directives or policies of either party. If the terms of this agreement are inconsistent with existing written directives or policies of either party entering this agreement, then those portions of the agreement which are determined to be inconsistent with such written directives and policies shall be invalid; but the remaining terms not affected by the inconsistency shall remain in full force and effect. At the first opportunity for revision of this agreement, all necessary changes shall be made by either an amendment to this agreement or by entering in a new superseding agreement, whichever is deemed expedient to the interested parties. Should disagreement arise on the interpretation of the provisions and/or amendments of this agreement that cannot be resolved by negotiations at the operating level of each party, the area(s) of disagreement shall be stated in writing by each party and promptly presented to a mutually approved mediator for non-binding mediation. If the parties cannot agree on the choice of a mediator or if the mediation does not resolve the dispute to the mutual approval of the parties, the parties are free to pursue any other legal remedies that are available.

ARTICLE II: REAL PROPERTY ACQUIRED FOR PURPOSE OF THE RESERVE

As well as agreeing to adhere to the rest of the provisions set forth at 15 CFR 921, the South Slough Management Commission and the Oregon Department of State Lands agree to the conditions set forth at 15 CFR 921.21 (e), which specify the legal documentation requirements concerning the use and disposition of real property acquired for Reserve purposes with federal funds under Section 315 of the CZMA.

ARTICLE III: PROGRAM EVALUATION

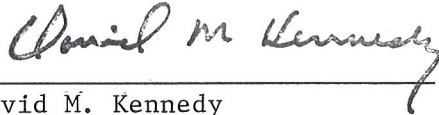
The Office of Ocean and Coastal Resource Management Division of NOAA will schedule periodic evaluations of Oregon's performance in meeting the terms of this agreement, financial assistance awards, and the Reserve management plan. Where findings of deficiency occur, NOAA may initiate action in accordance with the designation withdrawal procedures established by the CZMA and applicable regulations.

ARTICLE IV: EFFECTIVE DATE, REVIEW, AMENDMENT AND TERMINATION

- A. This agreement is effective on the date of the last signature on this agreement and shall be in effect until terminated by either party.
- B. This agreement will be reviewed periodically by both parties and may only be amended by the mutual written consent of both parties.
- C. This agreement may be terminated by mutual consent of both parties, or by NOAA if NOAA withdraws designation of the Reserve within the Reserve system, pursuant to applicable provisions of the CZMA and its implementing regulations as described under 15 CFR 923 Subpart L. The agreement may be terminated by Oregon Department of State Lands with or without cause. Should this agreement be terminated, reimbursement of unexpended funds from financial assistance awards shall be determined on a pro rata basis according to the amount of work done by the parties at the time of termination. Additionally, reimbursement for land purchased and facilities constructed with NOAA funds shall be consistent with terms and special award conditions of financial assistance awards.

MEMORANDUM OF AGREEMENT
NOAA – DSL – SSNERR
PAGE 6 OF 6

IN WITNESS THEREOF, the parties have caused this agreement to be executed.



David M. Kennedy
Director
Office of Ocean and Coastal
Resource Management
National Ocean Service
National Oceanic and
Atmospheric Administration
U.S. Department of Commerce

8/10/06
Date



Ann Hanus
Director, Department of State Lands
Chair, SSNERR Mgmt Commission

4/28/06
Date

INTERGOVERNMENTAL MASTER AGREEMENT

BETWEEN

UNIVERSITY OF OREGON
ON BEHALF OF ITS
OREGON INSTITUTE OF MARINE BIOLOGY

AND THE

STATE OF OREGON, ACTING BY AND THROUGH ITS
OREGON DEPARTMENT OF STATE LANDS
ON BEHALF OF THE
SOUTH SLOUGH NATIONAL ESTUARINE RESEARCH RESERVE MANAGEMENT COMMISSION

RECITALS

1. This Master Agreement (hereinafter referred to as "Agreement") is dated this _____, and is between the Oregon Department of State Lands on behalf of the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve Management Commission, an agency of the State of Oregon (hereinafter referred to as "SSNERR"), and the University of Oregon, on behalf of its Oregon Institute of Marine Biology (hereinafter referred to as "OIMB"). This Agreement is a continuation of a previous agreement between the parties that first went into effect on December 20, 2005.

2. SSNERR is administered by the Department of State Lands on behalf of the State of Oregon. OIMB is part of the University of Oregon, an instrumentality of the State of Oregon. The primary mission of both organizations is research and education. Both programs hold title to property on behalf of the State of Oregon and operate facilities in the rural coastal community of Charleston. This Agreement has been developed and will be carried out in accordance with policies and budget authority of the organizations, the rules and laws of the State of Oregon, applicable policies of the Oregon Department of Administrative Services, and applicable policies and procedures of the University of Oregon.

AGREEMENTS

1. **Effective Date and Duration**

1.1. **Term**. This Agreement shall be effective upon execution by both parties and shall terminate on _____, subject to the renewal provisions of this Section. Individual Task Orders will be sent to the Business Contact listed in Section 14.1 and will become effective upon execution by both parties.

1.2. **Automatic Renewal**. This Agreement shall automatically renew for successive 2-year terms on October 1 of each even-numbered year, unless earlier terminated in accordance with Section 13.

2. Intention

The intent of this Agreement is to:

- 2.1. Support the mutual interests of both organizations and to increase the efficiency and effectiveness of services provided by the State of Oregon; and
- 2.2. Set out in general terms an Agreement for cooperation between SSNERR and OIMB for new or on-going projects regarding:
 - 2.2.1. The development of facilities;
 - 2.2.2. The shared use of facilities;
 - 2.2.3. The shared use of equipment; and
 - 2.2.4. The administration of grants and finances.

3. Task Orders

- 3.1. Any project requiring the transfer of funds between the signatory parties will be described in a Task Order in substantially the form attached to this Agreement as Exhibit A. Any cooperative project outlined in this Agreement that can be accomplished without the transfer of funds does not require a Task Order.
- 3.2. Each project covered by a Task Order, or supplemental amendment to a Task Order, will be subject to the terms of this Agreement, detail the scope of work, include a detailed budget, and identify the responsibilities of OIMB and SSNERR.

FACILITIES

4. Facilities Development

- 4.1. When it is practical to do so, the parties agree to cooperate to develop facilities that benefit both organizations and increase efficiency and effectiveness. Examples of the types of facilities included in this Agreement include storage, office, laboratory, meeting, education, logistics and trails. This Agreement also covers facilities that support the missions of OIMB and SSNERR that may not be specified in the list of examples provided above. This Agreement authorizes the transfer of funds between OIMB and SSNERR, as specified in Task Orders, for the purposes of developing new, or improving existing facilities.
- 4.2. The specific terms of ownership, design, construction, operation, and repair of each facility developed as a result of this Agreement will be outlined in a separate facility-specific Task Order between the two parties named in this Agreement.

5. Use of Facilities

- 5.1. This Agreement authorizes the transfer of funds between OIMB and SSNERR for the use of facilities as described in individual Task Orders.
- 5.2. Both parties agree to share available space when possible to efficiently and effectively meet the needs of OIMB and SSNERR for maintenance, storage, accommodations, meetings, programs, and offices. Fees for use of certain facilities may be required in some cases. It shall be the responsibilities of the OIMB Director and the SSNERR Manager to establish the availability of facilities and determine if any fee will be required for the use of facilities.
- 5.3. Facility uses under this Agreement may include, but not limited to:
 - 5.3.1. Vessel, Vehicle and trailer storage
 - 5.3.2. Short- and long-term storage of laboratory and field equipment
 - 5.3.3. Overnight Accommodations: Occasional arrangements for overnight accommodations at SSNERR or OIMB as available for researchers, educators and interns.

EQUIPMENT

6. Shared use of Equipment

- 6.1. Both parties agree to share equipment, vehicles, vessels and other tangible resources as appropriate and available. The party that owns the equipment shall retain inventory control and shall have priority for use. Use by either party of equipment, vehicles or other tangible resources owned by the other party shall be by pre-arrangement on an "as available" basis.
- 6.2. **Use and replacement of supplies.** Each party is responsible for the timely replacement of chemicals, fuel, and other supplies expended in the use of the equipment.
- 6.3. **Maintenance, repair and replacement costs.** Each party will contribute as appropriate to the maintenance, repair and replacement of equipment used. In some cases, this contribution may be in the form of a user fee as established in the policies or rules of the parties.
- 6.4. Equipment uses under this Agreement may include but need not be limited to:
 - 6.4.1. **Scientific lab and field equipment.** The parties agree to share general laboratory and field equipment including incubators, freezers, microscopes, centrifuges, water samplers, nets, tools, trawls, etc., as available. Use of a specific piece of equipment must be requested and scheduled through the faculty or staff member responsible for that piece of equipment.
 - 6.4.2. **Boats, vehicles, and boating equipment.** The parties agree to share boats, vehicles, and boating equipment as needed and as available, for purposes of supporting the operations, research or education missions of the respective organizations. The party that serves as the registered owner of the respective

vehicles, boats or equipment shall have priority for use; use by the non-owner party shall be by pre-agreement on an "as available" basis. Only authorized graduate students, staff, and faculty will be permitted to use OIMB and SSNERR vehicles or vessels.

6.4.3. A University of Oregon Driver Clearance Statement shall be obtained by all OIMB and SSNERR personnel who make use of OIMB vehicles. The use of SSNERR vehicles shall be limited to Authorized Drivers (as described by Oregon Administrative Rule 125-155-0400). OIMB and SSNERR agree to abide by all state and University rules, guidelines, and policies governing the use of state and University vehicles, including provisions that prohibit the transportation of children and pets in state-owned vehicles. The specific terms of a vehicle use agreement will be mutually agreed to by the parties.

6.4.4. **Computer network and hardware.** Parties agree to share certain computer hardware including large format printers, Geographic Information Systems and other information systems, as appropriate and available.

JOINT PROPOSAL DEVELOPMENT

7. The parties agree to cooperate on the development of proposals for funding joint and collaborative projects that benefit both parties. These may include, but are not limited to, proposals for research, student support, and facility development. Jointly developed proposals shall include both direct costs and Facilities and Administrative costs as outlined in Section 8.1.

ADMINISTRATION AND FINANCE

8. Coordination of Administration and Finances

8.1. This Agreement authorizes the transfer of funds between SSNERR and OIMB for activities and personnel. Each activity or transfer of personnel requiring the transfer of funds shall be set forth in a Task Order which shall be subject to the terms of this Agreement.

8.2. Personnel

8.2.1. Both parties agree to cooperate on the development of an administrative process to recruit, hire and pay interns, undergraduate students, graduate students, and other employees.

8.2.2. This Agreement authorizes generally the transfer of funds between parties to support employees covered by this Agreement.

8.3. Consideration.

8.3.1. Each Task Order will contain a budget stipulating the funds available for the Task and an initial budget. Costs listed in the initial budget will be used as the basis for determining the funds available but the performing party will have budget flexibility, unless specifically stated otherwise in the Task Order.

- 8.3.2. Facilities and Administrative costs will be incorporated into each Task Order at the usual rates in place at the time for each party, specific to the type of work being performed.
- 8.3.3. Unless the Task Order provides otherwise, all activities under a Task Order will be billed no more often than monthly and no less often than quarterly for actual costs incurred in Task Order execution.

8.4. Debt limitations. The State of Oregon's payment obligations under this Agreement are conditioned upon the SSNERR receiving funding, appropriations, limitations, allotments, or other expenditure authority sufficient to allow SSNERR, in the exercise of its reasonable administrative discretion, to meet its payment obligations under this Agreement. OIMB is not entitled to receive payment under this Agreement from any part of Oregon state government other than SSNERR and the Department of State Lands. Nothing in this Agreement is to be construed as permitting any violation of Article XI, section 7 of the Oregon Constitution or any other law regulating liabilities or monetary obligations of the State of Oregon.

9. Contribution

- 9.1. **Generally.** If any third party makes any claim or brings any action, suit or proceeding alleging a tort as now or hereafter defined in ORS 30.260 (a "Third Party Claim") against a Party (the "Notified Party") with respect to which the other Party (the "Other Party") may have liability, the Notified Party shall promptly notify the Other Party in writing of the Third Party Claim and deliver to the Other Party, along with the written notice, a copy of the claim, process and all legal pleadings with respect to the Third Party Claim that have been received by the Notified Party. Each Party is entitled to participate in the defense of a Third Party Claim, and to defend a Third Party Claim with counsel of its own choosing. Receipt by the Other Party of the notice and copies required in this Section are conditions precedent to the Other Party's liability with respect to the Third Party Claim.
- 9.2. **Party Contribution.** With respect to a Third Party Claim, each Party shall contribute to the amount of any defense expenses (including attorneys' fees or costs of litigation), judgments, fines and amounts paid in settlement actually and reasonably incurred and paid or payable by the Party in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect the Parties' relative fault. Each Party represents that it has amounts lawfully available for the payment of such costs within its risk management fund, insurance coverage or funds otherwise lawfully available for such purpose. Each Party's relative fault shall be determined by reference to, among other things, the Parties' relative intent, knowledge, access to information and opportunity to correct or prevent the circumstances resulting in such expenses, judgments, fines or settlement amounts. Each Party's contribution amount shall be for its respective relative fault and payable solely from its risk management fund, insurance or other funds lawfully available for such purpose. The contribution amounts owed to the other Party under this Subsection (b) shall apply notwithstanding the relevant limits on liability to third parties under the Oregon Tort Claims Act, ORS 30.260 to 30.300

10. Independent Responsibility

Except as otherwise limited by Oregon law, ORS 30.260 through 30.300, and the Oregon Constitution, Article XI, Section 7, each party shall be responsible for its tortuous acts and those of its officers or employees arising out of, or in any way connected with the acts of each party under this Agreement.

11. Self-Insurance Coverages

SSNERR is insured with respect to tort liability by the State of Oregon Insurance Fund, a statutory system of self-insurance established by ORS chapter 278, and subject to the Oregon Tort Claims Act (ORS 30.260-30.300). The University is self-insured under ORS 352.107, with adequate levels of excess general liability and commercial auto liability insurance, and maintains workers' compensation insurance for its employees in conformance with ORS 656.017, subject to the Oregon Tort Claims Act (ORS 30.260-30.300). Each agency agrees to accept that coverage as adequate insurance of the other party with respect to personal injury and property damage.

12. Physical Damage

12.1. Excepting ordinary wear and tear, each party agrees to be responsible for any physical damage to facilities, equipment, boats, and vehicles incurred while using same, including any deductible, regardless of fault, subject to the terms and conditions of their respective Risk Management policies.

12.2. Necessary boat inventory and safety equipment will be the responsibility of each party prior to and upon return of a vessel. It is the user's responsibility to report routine maintenance requirements or problems of vessel or equipment to the owner.

13. Termination and Review of this Agreement

13.1. The OIMB Director and the SSNERR Manager shall review this Agreement annually.

13.2. This Agreement may be terminated at any time by mutual consent of both parties, or by either party, upon 30 days' notice in writing delivered by certified mail to the parties listed in Section 14.

13.3. If the parties terminate this Agreement, the parties shall address specifically any Task Order in effect at the time of termination. Any Task Order not specifically address shall be terminated at the time this Agreement is terminated and any non-expended and non-obligated funds allocated under the Task Order shall be returned to the appropriate agency.

14. Notices and Representatives

14.1. Notices and communications concerning the administration of this Agreement and concerning the technical aspects of the projects and tasks to be performed under this Agreement shall be sent to the Technical, Financial and Business Contacts shown below. Invoices for SSNERR shall be sent to the SSNERR Business Contact shown below. Invoices for OIMB shall be sent to the OIMB Business Contact shown below.

For OIMB:

Technical Contact

Craig Young
Oregon Institute of Marine Biology
PO Box 5389
63466 Boat Basin Road
Charleston OR, 97420
Tel: (541) 888-2581 (x299)
Fax: (541) 888-3250
cmyoung@uoregon.edu

Business Contact

Post Award
5219 University of Oregon
Eugene, OR 97403
Tel: (541) 346-5131
Fax: (541) 346-5138
sponsoredprojects@uoregon.edu

Financial Contact

Tammy D. Trost, Operations Manager
Oregon Institute of Marine Biology
PO Box 5389
63466 Boat Basin Road
Charleston OR, 97420
Tel: (541) 888-2581 (x202)
ttrost@uoregon.edu

FOR SSNERR:

Technical Contact

Gary Cooper
South Slough NERR
PO Box 5417
Charleston, OR 97420
Tel: (541) 888-8270 ext. 315
Fax: (541) 888-2733
gary.d.cooper@state.or.us

Business Contact

Cyndi Wickham
OR Department of State Lands
775 Summer St NE
Salem, OR 97310
Tel: (503) 986-5277
Fax: (503) 378-4844
cyndi.wickham@state.or.us

15. Merger Clause

THIS DOCUMENT CONSTITUTES THE ENTIRE AGREEMENT BETWEEN THE PARTIES. NO WAIVER, CONSENT, MODIFICATION OR CHANGE OF THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BIND EITHER PARTY UNLESS IN WRITING AND SIGNED BY BOTH PARTIES. SUCH WAIVER, CONSENT, MODIFICATION OR CHANGE, IF MADE, SHALL BE EFFECTIVE ONLY IN THE SPECIFIC INSTANCE AND FOR THE SPECIFIC PURPOSE GIVEN.

16. Effective Date

This Agreement shall become effective on the date of last signature.

17. Signatures

THIS CONTRACT AND ANY AMENDMENTS TO IT MAY BE EXECUTED IN COUNTERPARTS, EACH OF WHICH SHALL BE AN ORIGINAL AND ALL FO WHICH SHALL CONSTITUTE BUT ONE AND THE SAME INSTRUMENT, OR IN MULTIPLE ORIGINALS. A FAXED OR SCANNED FORM OF THIS CONTRACT OR ANY AMENDMENT THERETO, EXECUTED BY ONE OR MORE OF THE PARTIES, WILL CONSTITUTE A COUNTERPART HEREOF, AS LONG AS THE COUNTERPART BEARING THE PARTY'S ORIGINAL SIGNATURE IS PROMPTLY TRANSMITTED TO THE OTHER PARTY AND RECEIVED BY THAT PARTY FORTHWITH.

OREGON DEPARTMENT OF STATE
LANDS ON BEHALF OF THE SOUTH
SLOUGH NATIONAL ESTUARINE
RESEARCH RESERVE

UNIVERSITY OF OREGON
ON BEHALF OF ITS
OREGON INSTITUTE FOR MARINE BIOLOGY

By: Cynthia Wickham

By: [Signature]

Name: Cynthia Wickham

Name: Analinda Camacho

Title: Deputy Director

Title: Director, Sponsored Projects Services

Date: 5/24/16

Date: 5-23-16

Appendix F

List of Formal Agreements between the Reserve & Partner Organizations

Organization	Type of Agreement	Date Signed	Expiration Date
NOAA/DSL	MOA	August 10, 2006	None
NOAA	Site License Agreement	February 12, 2009	September 30, 2028
BLM	MOU	April 6, 2015	April 6, 2020
CTCLUSI	MOU	April 15, 2013	December 31, 2021
COQUILLE INDIAN TRIBE	MOU	January 27, 2015	January 27, 2020
ODFW	MOU	October 15, 2016	October 15, 2021
ODOT	Interagency	March 21, 2007	March 21, 2018
ODF	MOU	May 16, 2011	None
OIMB	MOA	July 1, 1999	June 30, 2098
COOSWA	MOU	October 15, 2015	October 15, 2020
CFPA	MOU	April 1, 2016	March 31, 2018
FOSS	Cooperative Agreement	September 21, 2007	August 31, 2017
OR COAST AQUARIUM	Cooperative Agreement	September 30, 2011	September 30, 2016

Appendix G

Federal Consistency Determination

Background. Federal consistency is the provision within the Coastal Zone Management Act that federal actions that have reasonably foreseeable effects on any land or water use or natural resource of the coastal zone should be consistent with the enforceable policies of a coastal state's federally approved Coastal Management Program. Per Federal regulations, 15 C.F.R. Part 921.4 (b) and 921.13 (a)(12), and 921.30 (b) if the state has a federally approved Coastal Management Program, a certification that the National Estuarine Research Reserve is consistent to the maximum extent practicable with that program is required when designating a reserve.

Additionally, per Federal regulations, 921.33, boundary changes, amendments to the management plan, and addition of multiple-site components to the reserve are subject to these requirements. The required elements within the management plan include reserve goals, objectives, and strategies; plans for administration, research, education, public access, construction, acquisition and resource protection; and a memorandum of understanding between the state and NOAA regarding the Federal-state relationship.

CZM Consistency. This appendix documents the process used to determine the consistency of the management plan revision with enforceable policies of Oregon's coastal management program.

The attached documents provide the Oregon Coastal Management Program (OCMP) with the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Consistency Determination under the Coastal Zone Management Act § 307 (c)(1) and 15 C.F.R. part 930, subpart C, for management plan approval. The information in this Consistency Determination is provided pursuant to 15 C.F.R. § 930.39. This activity includes approval of a reserve management drafted in compliance with 15 C.F.R §921.13. This plan includes strategies, goals, objectives, and actions for research and education in, and stewardship of, the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve in Coos County, Oregon.

NOAA has determined that the approval of the South Slough Reserve's management plan revision affects the land or water uses or natural resources of Oregon in the manner described in the original National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) documentation for the Reserve, unchanged from the time of designation.

The OCMP contains the following applicable enforceable policies for Coos County applicable to the South Slough Reserve:

Coos Bay Estuary Management Plan.

Based upon the following information, data and analysis, the management plan revision is consistent to the maximum extent practicable with the enforceable policies of the OCMP.

Enforceable policies for the South Slough Reserve include the Coos Bay Estuary Management Plan, which prioritizes protection of the South Slough estuary. The estuary management plan is the basis of Volume II of the Coos County Comprehensive Plan. The enforceable policies have been adopted into Chapter III of the Coos County Zoning and Land Development Ordinances, Chapter III - Coos Bay Estuary Management Plan.

Staff requested the Coos County Planner Jill Rolfe to review a draft of the management plan for its consistency with the comprehensive plan. On June 18, 2015, Ms. Rolfe informed the Reserve of her determination that the management plan is consistent with the county's comprehensive plan. On June 19, 2015, staff forwarded the consistency determination, a copy of the Coos Bay Estuary Plan and comprehensive plan, and a summary of Oregon's enforceable policies, along with a review draft of the management plan, to Heather Wade, Coastal State-Federal Relations Coordinator for Oregon's Department of Land Conservation and Development (DLCD), which oversees the Oregon Coastal Management Program, and requested her to review the plan for its consistency with the Coastal Zone Management Act.

Pursuant to 15 C.F.R. §930.41, the Oregon Coastal Management Program has 60 days from the receipt of this statement in which to concur with or object to this Consistency Determination, or to request an extension under 15 C.F.R. §930.41 (b). The State's concurrence will be presumed if the State's response is not received by NOAA on the 60th day from receipt of this determination.

On Aug. 10, 2015, Ms. Wade notified the Reserve she concurred with the determination that the management plan revision is consistent with the relevant enforceable policies of OCMP as required by the Coastal Zone Management Act.

Copies of the letters to and from the Coos County Planner and DLCD/OCMP are included in this appendix. The Coos County Comprehensive Plan, Vol. II, is included in the South Slough Management Plan for 2015-2020 as Appendix U.

Included:

- DLCD consistency concurrence
- Letter to Heather Wade, DLCD
- Letter from Coos planning office
- OCMP enforceable policies for SSNERR



Oregon
Kate Brown, Governor

Oregon Coastal Management Program
Department of Land Conservation and Development
635 Capitol Street, Suite 150
Salem, Oregon 97301-2540
Phone (503) 373-0050
FAX (503) 378-6033
www.oregon.gov/LCD/OCMP

August 10, 2015

Mr. John Bragg
Coastal Training program Coordinator
South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve
PO Box 5417
61907 Seven Devils Road
Coos Bay, OR 97420

Project: Updated SSNERR Management Plan
Agency: South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve (SSNERR)
Location: South Slough Estuary, Coos County, Oregon

Dear Mr. Bragg:

The Oregon Department of Land Conservation and Development (DLCD) has reviewed the SSNERR Consistency Determination.

The South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve (SSNERR) is revising the SSNERR management plan for 2015-2020. The purpose of the plan is to guide activities within the Reserve to improve the management and understanding of Pacific Northwest estuaries and coastal watersheds by proactively addressing priority management issues using collaborative, adaptively-managed processes that engage stakeholders. The priorities of the new management plan are to (1) characterize and communicate the current trends and likely future effects of climate change on Pacific Northwest coastal communities and estuarine ecosystems, (2) promote and apply comprehensive and adaptive approaches to maintaining and improving the long term resilience of coastal habitats in Pacific Northwest estuaries and coastal watersheds, and (3) monitor, research, manage, and communicate the impacts of existing and emerging invasive species within the Reserve and characterize potential threats from other locations.

The SSNERR states that the updated management plan is consistent to the maximum extent practicable with the Oregon Coastal Management Program (OCMP). The Reserve also plans to obtain any required state approvals, permits, or certifications, that may be needed for future projects as supported in the management plan. DLCD concurs that this action is consistent with the OCMP.

If you have any questions or comments regarding this decision or the consistency review process,
please contact me at 503-934-0029 or by e-mail at: heather.wade@state.or.us.

Sincerely,

/s/

Heather Wade

Coastal State-Federal Relations Coordinator



Department of State Lands
South Slough National Estuarine
Research Reserve
P.O. Box 5417
61907 Sever Devils Road
Charleston, Oregon 97420
(541) 888-5558
FAX (541) 888-5559
www.southsloughestuary.org

June 18, 2015

State Land Board
Kate Brown
Governor

Heather Wade, Coastal State-Federal Relations Coordinator
Oregon Coastal Management Program
Oregon Department of Land Conservation and Development
535 Capitol Street NE, Suite 150
Salem, OR 97301-2540

Jeanne Atkins
Secretary of State

Ted Wheeler
State Treasurer

Ms. Wade:

The South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve (Reserve) is a 5,000-acre natural area located in Coos County and managed, under Section 315 of the Coastal Zone Management Act (CZMA), as a partnership between Oregon and the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) for research, education, and training. The Reserve is an agency of Department of State Lands, which owns the land occupied by the Reserve and manages operations.

Oregon law defines the purpose for the Reserve and designates State Lands as the Reserve's state partner. State Lands is the administrative agency of the State Land Board. All decisions at the Reserve must comply with policies of the State Land Board. The South Slough Management Commission oversees programs and activities to ensure they remain consistent with Oregon's management policy for the Reserve. Commissioners are appointed by the Governor to four-year terms. The Director of State Lands serves as commission chair.

Work is guided by the South Slough Management Plan. NOAA requires the Reserve to periodically revise the management plan to remain consistent with federal laws, the CZMA, applicable state laws and enforceable policies, and county land use plans and regulations. The Reserve is revising its management plan for 2015-2020. The Department of Land Conservation and Development must determine the plan's consistency with the NOAA-approved Oregon Coastal Management Program.

I am **submitting a consistency determination**. I believe the revised plan is consistent to the maximum extent possible with Oregon's statewide planning goals, state agency authorities, enforceable policies of Oregon's Coastal Management Program, the Coos Bay estuary Management Plan (an element of the Coos County Comprehensive Plan), and county land use regulations. If, at any point, the Reserve will require state approvals for activities, the Reserve will seek out the required permits and certifications at that time.

APPROVED: _____
DATE: _____



Coos County Planning Department
Coos County Courthouse Annex, Coquille, Oregon 97423
Mailing Address: 250 N. Baxter, Coos County Courthouse, Coquille, Oregon 97423
Physical Address: 225 N. Adams, Coquille, Oregon
(541) 396-7770
FAX (541) 396-1022 / TDD (800) 735-2900
planning@co.coos.or.us
Jill Rolfe, Planning Director

June 18, 2015

John Bragg
South Slough NERR
PO Box 5417
Charleston, OR 97420-0607

RE: South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve (SSNERR) Management Plan

Mr. Bragg,

Thank you for sharing your management plan with me. The South Slough portion of the Coos County Comprehensive Plan (CCCP) Volume II was developed for the protection of the reserve and ecological resources while enhancing the education and research components of SSNERR.

The South Slough portion of the CCCP is divided into three different types of management units: Natural; Conservation; and Development, with most of the aquatic and island areas are designated as natural to allow for protection of the all resources. The natural management unit allows for: Low intensity, water dependent recreation; Research and educational observations; Navigational aids; Restoration measures; Protection of habitat, nutrient, fish, wildlife and aesthetics; Preservation of cultural, historical and archaeological resources; and research and education observation structures.

The enforceable policies depends on the type of review; however, after extensive review of the plan and review of the South Slough Estuary Zones I was able to determine that the management plan is consistent with Volume II of the Coos County Comprehensive Plan and the enforceable policies. The enforceable policies have been adopted into Chapter III of the Coos County Zoning and Land Development Ordinances, Chapter III Coos Bay Estuary management Plan and are attached to this letter.

During our meeting we also talked about the effort of the Coos Bay Estuary group to update the Coos Bay Estuary portion of the CCCP as well as seeking help from South Slough with the updates to the Coquille River Estuary Management Plan updates. The Planning Department has been working on compiling data for the Coquille River Estuary Management Plan and I can see the benefits of have South Slough help out with the project.

Thank you very much and let me know if you need any more information regarding your management plan.

Jill Rolfe, Planning Director

Enforceable Policies of Oregon’s Coastal Management Program for Coos County and the South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve

(Appendix 3 of the Coos Bay Estuary Management Plan, 1986)

POLICIES:

#1 Estuary Classification

The Coos Bay Estuary is recognized as a "Deep-Draft Development Estuary" by the local governments, which is consistent with the overall Oregon Estuary Classification (OAR 660-17-000, as amended). Further, the Estuary Management Plan's allowed uses and activities are, and must remain, consistent with the "Deep-Draft Development" classification and the estuarine management unit requirements of Goal #16.

This strategy recognizes the development mandates of LCDC Goal #16.

#2 General Schedule of Permitted Uses and General Use Priorities

Local government shall restrict estuarine development and/or alteration so it is equal to, or less intensive, than uses and activities that are allowed, or may be allowed pursuant to LCDC Goal #16 and the Oregon Administrative Rule classifying Oregon Estuaries (OAR 600-17-000 as amended 6/81).

- I. Local government's determination regarding estuarine management unit designation as well as respective uses and activities permitted reflect priorities for estuarine uses and activities necessary to:
 - 1. Ensure compatibility with the requirement of LCDC Goal #16 and the administrative rule classifying Oregon Estuaries (OAR 600-17-00) as amended 6/81).
 - 2. Maintain the integrity of the estuarine ecosystem. This shall be implemented by limiting uses and activities within Natural, Conservation and Development Estuarine Management Units so that such uses and activities are not more intensive than those following.

MANAGEMENT UNIT: NATURAL

- A. Uses and Activities listed below may be allowed in Natural Management Units (LCDC Goal #16) without special assessment of the resource capabilities of the area, but subject to special conditions and other policies set forth elsewhere in this Plan. Note: existing man-made features may be retained, maintained and protected if existing on October 7, 1977.
 - 1. Undeveloped low-intensity, water-dependent recreation
 - 2. Research and educational observations
 - 3. Navigational aids (such as beacons and buoys)
 - 4. Passive restoration measures

Appendix H

Public Comment

The 2017-2022 South Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve Management Plan was developed over several years with input from Reserve staff, state agencies, Tribes, and other partners, including the National Oceanic and Atmosphere Administration (NOAA).

NOAA’s Office for Coastal Management (OCM) reviewed the plan at the first draft stage, the glossy draft stage, and in the final draft stage. NOAA’s OCM is the federal agency responsible for the final approval of the plan after ensuring sufficient opportunity for public comment, per 15 C.F.R. § 921.33, which includes a published Federal Register Notice for a 30-day public comment period.

The public comment period for this plan was published in the Federal Register on April 14, 2017. Additionally, an Oregon statewide public notice was published on the Oregon Department of State Land’s website and in various media outlets on March 9, 2017. The public had access to the draft plan via the Reserve’s website (<http://www.oregon.gov/dsl/SS/>) from March 9, onward. Local and federal public comment was taken until May 15, 2017. A public meeting was held at the Reserve’s Interpretive Center located at 61907 Seven Devils Rd, Charleston, OR 97420, April 12, 2017. After the public comment period, revisions were made to the plan; where appropriate. No written comments were received. All comments were made at the local public meeting held at the Reserve on April 12, 2017. Comments are summarized and addressed in the table below.

Source of Comment	Date Received	Summary of Comment	Response
Public meeting at the Reserve	4/12/17	Is there state statute that determines core vs. buffer areas of the Reserve based on the state’s Tier 1, Tier 2, and Tier 3 system?	The core and buffer determinations cited in this plan are guided by federal regulations, 15 C.F.R. § 921.1 and NOAA’s Reserve System Management Plan Guidelines, and are unrelated to Oregon state statutes. The core and buffer classifications in this plan [page 2-18] meet NOAA guidance and are approved by NOAA. No changes required.
Public meeting at the Reserve	4/12/17	It could be useful to add land acquisition strategies to the reserve’s strategic plan.	Chapter 9, the Reserve’s Land Acquisition Plan, details the Reserve’s land acquisition strategies. Land acquisition is now also cited as a strategy for addressing habitat protection. Change made in Chapter 3: Reserve Strategic Plan, on page 3-9.
Public meeting at the Reserve	4/12/17	Other potential challenges to include: mineral extraction, noise, light.	Comment noted; thank you. No changes required.

Source of Comment	Date Received	Summary of Comment	Response
Public meeting at the Reserve	4/12/17	With regards to invasive species, should the reserve call out quarantine areas for invasive species management? Does the plan work for whatever control measures might be used (e.g. herbicides, biocides)? The plan can be more stringent than other regulations.	Invasive species strategies are detailed in Chapter 3: Reserve Strategic Plan, under Priority 3 [page 3-10]. This plan further details invasive species management throughout Chapter 4: Program Foundations. The Reserve uses the Oregon Administrative Rules, the Reserve Management Commission, and its suite of program partners to guide invasive species management, including the development of quarantine areas and/or use of herbicides, as necessary. No changes required.
Public meeting at the Reserve	4/12/17	There's a call to understand how the public understands science (e.g. climate change) through sociological research. The science program might want to develop additional capacity in that direction; therefore consider including that language in the plan to allow the program to grow.	The Reserve regularly works with partners to expand the capacity of Reserve work and address topics and project aspects that are beyond in-house expertise. This is an area where the Reserve would rely on collaborative work with partners and specialized contractors. No changes required.
Public meeting at the Reserve	4/12/17	UO/OIMB and OSU each have a seat on the management commission. Why is there only one tribal seat, instead of one each for the Coquille Tribe and the Confederated Tribes of the Coos, Lower Umpqua, and Siuslaw Indians?	The process to add an additional seat to the Reserve Management Commission is regulated by state statute and finalized by Oregon's Governor. See Chapter 5: Administration Plan [page 5-2 and 5-3] for more information on the Reserve Management Commission. The Commission has begun to explore the options for expanding Tribal representation on the Commission. No changes required.
Public meeting at the Reserve	4/12/17	A GIS position is listed under needs; maybe talk about that position as a data archivist to deal with data so data is not lost as people come and go with grant-funded projects.	The full text regarding the proposed GIS & Data Management position can be found in Chapter 5: Administrative Plan [page 5-9]. All data generated and managed by the Reserve is stored on an in-house secure server. Furthermore, NOAA requires a data management plan for each grant awarded to the Reserve. The Reserve also regularly works with NOAA's Centralized Data Management Office (CDMO), which maintains an on-line data and information server for access to NERRS System-wide Monitoring Program data. The CDMO data, including relevant GIS layers and metadata, can be found via www.nerrsdata.org .

Source of Comment	Date Received	Summary of Comment	Response
Public meeting at the Reserve	4/12/17	Concerns about the restricted areas shown on the hunting map.	The official Reserve hunting map was updated and approved by the Reserve Management Commission on April 13, 2017, at a public meeting held the day after the Management Plan meeting noted here. The updated map is now incorporated into the plan. Change made in Chapter 7: Resource Protection Plan, on page 7-4.
Public meeting at the Reserve	4/12/17	The Reserve’s Management Commission has taken previous actions on things like trapping, but it’s not clear if their actions take the form of rules. Rulemaking is a separate process. Do Commission policies have the same legal effect of a rule? If not, should they be put through the full rulemaking process?	Decisions by the Reserve’s Management Commission do not have the same legal weight as Oregon statutes or administrative rules. A Management Commission decision would have to go through the state legislative rulemaking process to become law. However, Management Commission decisions do affect Reserve practices and can be used to justify creating new laws. A Record of Decision is being created, outside of this plan, to document the Reserve Management Commission’s decisions. The Record of Decision will be housed at the Reserve and will be separate from this plan. No changes required.
Public meeting at the Reserve	4/12/17	Public uses – would be good to include Indian Point and other Reserve-managed lands that are not included in the Reserve’s official boundary. This plan makes it seem like the Reserve isn’t doing anything for those lands; the plan should constitute the “entire universe” of the Reserve’s work.	This NOAA directed Management Plan is for the lands that are federally recognized as part of the Reserve. This plan constitutes all the Reserve’s work that is entitled to the plan. Oregon Revised Statutes and Oregon Administrative Rules guide all lands managed by the Reserve’s Management Commission. When the boundary of the Reserve is updated at the federal level, this plan will apply to all lands within that boundary. See Chapter 9: Land Acquisition Plan for more information. No changes required.
Public meeting at the Reserve	4/12/17	Criteria for land acquisition: might add acquiring lands for facilities (e.g. for maintenance).	Foci for land acquisition are detailed in Chapter 9. At this time the Reserve is prioritizing facilities maintenance over facility expansion. See Chapter 6: Facilities Development & Improvement Plan [page 6-1] for more. No changes required.